

# MULTIFUNCTIONAL DIGITAL COLOR SYSTEMS / MULTIFUNCTIONAL DIGITAL SYSTEMS Printing Guide

ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP

©2012 Oki Data Corporation All rights reserved Under the copyright laws, this manual cannot be reproduced in any form without prior written permission of Oki Data.

# Preface

Thank you for purchasing Oki Data Multifunctional Digital Systems. Also this guide describes instructions on how to set up the printer drivers required for this equipment, and how to print with them. Read this manual before using your Multifunctional Digital Systems. Keep this manual within easy reach, and use it to configure an environment that makes best use of the OKI MFP's functions.

# How to read this manual

# Symbols in this manual

In this manual, some important items are described with the symbols shown below. Be sure to read these items before using this equipment.

# 

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, could result in death, serious injury, serious damage, or fire in the equipment or surrounding assets.



Note

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in minor or moderate injury, partial damage to the equipment or surrounding assets, or loss of data.

Indicates information to which you should pay attention when operating the equipment.

Other than the above, this manual also describes information that may be useful for the operation of this equipment with the following signage:

Tip Describes handy information that is useful to know when operating the equipment.



Pages describing items related to what you are currently doing. See these pages as required.

# **Screens and Operation Procedures**

- Illustrations for the control panel and the touch panel shown in this manual are those of the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP. The shape and location of some buttons on the control panel and the dimension of the touch panel of the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP differ from those of other series, however, the names and functions of the buttons and parts are the same.
- In this manual, the screens and the operation procedures in Windows are described for Windows 7.
   The details on the screens may differ depending on how the equipment is used, such as the status of the installed options, the OS version and the applications.
- If you use Windows Server 2008 R2, refer to the operation procedure for Windows 7, though the screens or the menu names, etc. may differ.
- In this manual, the screens and the operation procedures in Macintosh are described for Mac OS X 10.2.x and Mac OS X 10.6.x.
   The details on the screens may differ depending on how the equipment is used, such as the status of the installed.

The details on the screens may differ depending on how the equipment is used, such as the status of the installed options, the OS version and the applications.

In this manual, the initial values of the setting items are underlined.

# Trademarks

- The official name of Windows XP is Microsoft Windows XP Operating System.
- The official name of Windows Vista is Microsoft Windows Vista Operating System.
- The official name of Windows 7 is Microsoft Windows 7 Operating System.
- The official name of Windows Server 2003 is Microsoft Windows Server 2003 Operating System.
- The official name of Windows Server 2008 is Microsoft Windows Server 2008 Operating System.
- Microsoft, Windows, Windows NT, and the brand names and product names of other Microsoft products are trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the US and other countries.
- Apple, AppleTalk, Macintosh, Mac, Mac OS, Safari, and TrueType are trademarks of Apple Inc. in the US and other countries.
- Adobe, Acrobat, Reader, and PostScript are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or other countries.
- Mozilla, Firefox and Firefox logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of Mozilla Foundation in the U.S. and other countries.
- IBM, AT and AIX are trademarks of International Business Machines Corporation.
- NOVELL, NetWare, and NDS are trademarks of Novell, Inc.
- Other company and product names given in this manual or displayed in this software may be the trademarks of their respective companies.

Preface1
----------

# Chapter 1 OVERVIEW

Features and Functions	6
About Printer Drivers	7
For Macintosh	7
For UNIX/Linux	7

# Chapter 2 PRINTING FROM WINDOWS

Before Using the Printer Driver	10
Configuring the options	10
Setting the department code	
Copying the PPD file for Windows	15
Printing From Application	16
Considerations and limitations	
How to print	
Setting Up Print Options	
How to set up	
Print options	
Printing With Best Functions for Your Needs	
Printing various print job types	
Layout and finishing options in [Basic] tab menu	
Layout and finishing options in [Finishing] tab menu	
Finishing options in [Paper Handling] tab menu	
Finishing options in [Effect] tab menu	
Using various types of paper	
Switching equipment to print jobs	
Splitting a print job across two pieces of equipment (Tandem Printing)	

# Chapter 3 PRINTING FROM Macintosh

Printing From Application on Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.7.x	118
Considerations and limitations	118
How to print from Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.7.x	119
Page Setup dialog on Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.7.x	120
Print dialog on Mac OS X 10.3.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x	125
Print dialog on Mac OS X 10.2.x	150

# Chapter 4 PRINTING FROM UNIX/Linux

Printing From Application	68
Considerations and limitations	68
Printing using lp command	68
Generic "lp" and "lptap" options 16	68
General options	69
PCL5e specific options 18	82

# Chapter 5 MANAGING PRINT JOBS FROM THE CONTROL PANEL

Monitoring the Print Job Status	<b>186</b>
Normal Print / Scheduled Print jobs	186
Proof Print jobs	191
Private Print jobs	194
Hold Print jobs	198
Invalid jobs	202
Printing files from USB media (USB Direct Printing)	205
Viewing the Print Job Log	212
Checking Supplies	214
Viewing the drawer status	214
Checking remaining toner levels	214

# Chapter 6 OTHER PRINTING METHODS

FTP Printing2'	16
Email Printing2'	17

# Chapter 7 APPENDIX

Internal Fonts List	220
Internal PCL fonts list	220
Internal PS fonts list	221
INDEX	223

# **OVERVIEW**

This chapter provides an overview of the printing functions.

Features and Functions	. 6
About Printer Drivers	. 7
For Macintosh	7
For UNIX/Linux	7

# **Features and Functions**

# **Extensive Client Platform Support**

This equipment supports printing from IBM-compatible PC, Macintosh, and UNIX/Linux workstations. Not all features are supported on all platforms, however.

# **Various Port Options**

You can map this equipment to print to an SMB, IPP, Raw TCP, WSD, or LPR port.

# Multiple Job Types

Job Types refer to the way this equipment handles a print job.

- The Normal mode requires no special handling and is the most frequently used printing mode.
- Scheduled Print lets you specify the time and date at which to print a job.
- The Private Print mode allows you to hold a job in the print queue until you enter a password at the copier touch panel to print the job.
- The Hold Print mode allows you to hold a job in the hold queue until you continue the job from the touch panel.
- The Proof Print mode prints the first copy of a multi-copy job and then awaits your approval before printing the remaining copies.
- Overlay File prints a document element, such as text or graphics, to a file for superimposing on the background of other documents.
- The Store to e-Filing mode allows you to store the printed document in e-Filing.
- The Multiple Job Type feature allows you to print jobs of more than one type together. For example, you can store a job in the specified e-Filing and print it at the specified time by combining Scheduled Print and Store to e-Filing.

# **Professional Finishing Options**

Depending on the type of finishing units you have installed on this equipment, you can choose to sort, group, fold and staple your documents (including saddle-stitching) and punch binding holes.

# Sophisticated Document Layout and Assembly Options

You can choose whether to print your document as you have set it up in the application, or to impose printer-driven document layout options such as printing in Book Format or printing Multiple Pages per Sheet.

Additionally, the printer drivers provide the ability to print selected pages on different media. This includes printing front and back covers, inserting sheets at predefined positions within the document, or interleaving pages so that every other page is inserted blank or printed on a different type of media.

# Various Sizes of Printing Paper Available

You can use paper larger than the standard sizes defined in the custom paper size setting when you print data created with applications.

# Watermark and Image Overlay Support

Watermarks are a great way to subtly convey useful information about your printed documents. Common watermarks are "Confidential," "Draft," and "Original." Several watermarks have been pre-defined for use with your documents, or you can create and save your own custom watermarks.

Watermarks consist of text. Image Overlays can be any combination of text, graphics or other document elements. Printing watermarks consumes fewer resources than using Image Overlays, so you should use watermarks wherever possible, particularly when printing speed is an issue.

1

# **About Printer Drivers**

Printer drivers required for each OS are included in the Client Utilities CD-ROM. For instructions on how to install them, refer to the *Software Installation Guide*.

# For Macintosh

Printer drivers required for Macintosh OSs are included in the following folders of the Client Utilities CD-ROM:

#### **Macintosh PPD files**

 [Client Utilities CD-ROM]: MacPPD: OSX This includes the PPD files to enable printing from Macintosh on the Mac OS X 10.2.4 to 10.3.X and Mac OS X 10.4 to 10.7.x, and the plug-in file to enable printing from Mac OS X 10.4 to 10.7.x.

# For UNIX/Linux

Printer drivers required for UNIX/Linux are included in the following folders of the Client Utilities CD-ROM:

#### Solaris filter

The tar file for Solaris v2.6/2.7/7.8/8/9/10 is included in the following folder: Choose the appropriate file depending on the model to be used.

• [Client Utilities CD-ROM]/Admin/SolarisFilter/Usa/

#### **HP-UX filter**

The tar file for HP-UX ver.10.20/11.x and HP-UX64 ver.11.31 is included in the following folder:

- Choose the appropriate file depending on the model to be used.
- [Client Utilities CD-ROM]/Admin/HP-UXFilter/Usa/

#### **AIX filter**

The tar file for AIX 4.3.3 is included in the following folder: Choose the appropriate file depending on the model to be used.

[Client Utilities CD-ROM]/Admin/AIXFilter/Usa/

#### Linux filter

The tar file for Red Hat 7.x/8.x/9.x, Red Hat Enterprise WS2, SuSE Linux 7.x/8.x/9.x, Mandrake Linux 7.x/8.x/9.x and Turbolinux 8/10 is included in the following folder:

- Choose the appropriate file depending on the model to be used.
- [Client Utilities CD-ROM]/Admin/LinuxFilter/Usa/

#### SCO UNIX filter

The tar file for SCO UnixWare 7 and SCO Open UNIX 8 is included in the following folder:

- Choose the appropriate file depending on the model to be used.
- [Client Utilities CD-ROM]/Admin/OpenUnixFilter/Usa/

#### **CUPS PPD file**

The PPD file to enable printing from CUPS is included in the following folder: Choose the appropriate file depending on the model to be used.

- [Client Utilities CD-ROM]/Admin/CUPS/Usa/2-sided\_default/ This PPD file enables to set 2-sided printing by default.
- [Client Utilities CD-ROM]/Admin/CUPS/Usa/normal/ This PPD file enables to set 1-sided printing by default.

# 2

# **PRINTING FROM WINDOWS**

This chapter provides instructions on how to print from a Windows computer.

Before Using the Printer Driver	
Configuring the options	
Setting the department code	
Copying the PPD file for Windows	
Printing From Application	
Considerations and limitations	
How to print	
Setting Up Print Options	
How to set up	
Print options	
Printing With Best Functions for Your Needs	
Printing various print job types	
Layout and finishing options in [Basic] tab menu	
Layout and finishing options in [Finishing] tab menu	92
Finishing options in [Paper Handling] tab menu	
Finishing options in [Effect] tab menu	
Using various types of paper	
Switching equipment to print jobs	
Splitting a print job across two pieces of equipment (Tandem Printing)	

# **Before Using the Printer Driver**

Before printing, you have to configure the following options:

· Configuration Settings

To use optional devices such as optional drawers, the Finisher or Hole Punch Unit, you must first configure these devices. The features of these optional devices are not available unless you inform the system that the optional devices are installed.

Before printing, you can configure the following option if necessary:

Department Code

You can use department codes to manage each job. For example, a system administrator can check how many sheets of copies a certain department has made. When the Department code is enabled, you are prompted to enter a department code before printing. If you enter the department code in the corresponding field in advance, you can print without having to do this every time. Ask your administrator about the codes. When SNMP communication between the equipment and your computer is enabled, you are also prompted to enter the code before printing.

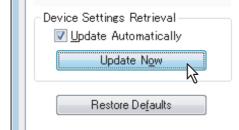
# Configuring the options

To use this equipment properly, you need to save the configuration of the options installed on the [Device Settings] tab menu after you installed the printer drivers. In the default setting, you can obtain the configuration data of options installed automatically by opening the [Device Settings] tab menu. If SNMP communication between this equipment and your computer is not available, or you want to configure options manually, see the following page:

P.11 "Configuring options manually"

#### Note

When SNMP communication between this equipment and your computer is enabled, you can retrieve the option configuration information by clicking [Update Now].



# Configuring options manually

If SNMP communication between this equipment and your computer is not available:

#### Setting the [Device Settings] tab manually

#### Note

You need to log in to Windows with the "Administrator" privilege.

#### Click [Start] menu and select [Devices and Printers].

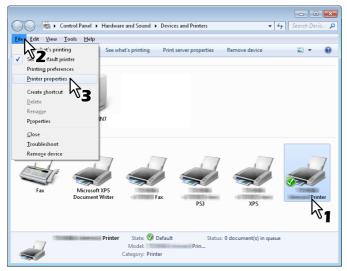
The Printers folder appears.

Tips

- For Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008 Click [Start] menu, [Control Panel], [Hardware and Sound] and select [Printers].
- For Windows XP or Windows Server 2003 Click [Start] menu and select [Printers and Faxes].

# 2 Select the printer driver for this equipment, and then click [Printer properties] in the [File] menu.

The printer driver properties dialog box appears.



- For Windows XP / Windows Vista / Windows Server 2003 / Windows Server 2008, click [Properties] in the [File] menu and select the printer driver for this equipment.
- If the [File] menu is not displayed, press [Alt].
- If the dialog box displayed does not allow the printer driver properties to be changed, follow the procedure below.
  - For Windows Vista, click [Run as administrator] and [Properties] in the [File] menu.
     If the password entry screen appears, enter the administrator password.
     The [User Account Control] dialog box appears. Click [Continue].
  - For Windows 7, some tab menus have a 💮 button in the printer driver properties. To change the properties, click on it. If the properties cannot be changed, ask your system administrator.
- To change a network-installed printer driver, the administrator privilege is necessary. Ask your system administrator for details.

General Sharing Ports Advanced Col	or Management Security Device Settings
A4 B4 B5 B5	Modgl Selection: Drawerg: Drawerg: Drawer 1.2 & Drawer 3.4 Fjracher: None Hole Punch Unit: None Exgernal LCF: None
Device Settings Retrieval	
Restore Defaults	

**3** Display the [Device Settings] tab menu, and set the following options.

**Model Selection** — This sets the model type. The setup items of the printer driver are changed according to the model selected.

#### Note

If you select [PCL], you can narrow down the setup items of the printer driver to those used commonly in all of the OKI MFP series. It is convenient in such cases as when you are using a printer driver already installed to other OKI MFP.

Option — This option sets whether the following optional devices are installed.

- Drawers This sets whether the optional drawers or the Large Capacity Feeder (optional) (not available for some countries or regions) are installed.
- Finisher This sets whether or not the Finisher (optional) is installed.
- Hole Punch Unit This sets whether or not the Hole Punch Unit (optional) is installed.
- External LCF This sets whether or not the External Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is installed.
- Inserter Unit This sets whether or not the Inserter Unit (optional) is installed.

#### Note

The Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is not available for some countries or regions.

Tips

- · Setup items differ depending on the model and the option configuration.
- For more information about each item, see the descriptions about the [Device Settings] tab.
   P.69 "[Device Settings] tab"

## **4** Click [Drawer Settings].

The [Drawer Settings] dialog box appears.

# **5** Set the following options and click [OK].

	Paper Size:		Paper Type:		Attribute:	
Drawer 1:	A4	•	Plain	•	None	•
Dra <u>w</u> er 2:	B4	-	Plain	•	None	-
D <u>r</u> awer 3:	A3	•	Plain	•	None	-
Draw <u>e</u> r 4:	B5	•	Plain	•	None	-
L <u>O</u> F:	A4		Plain	-	None	Ŧ
External LCF:	A4	-	Plain	-	None	-
Bypass Tray:	Automatic	•	Plain	•	None	•
Override Applica Restore Def	tion Paper Source Settin aults	gs				
				-	OK . C	Cancel

Drawer 1 — Select the size and type of paper that is loaded in the 1st Drawer.

Drawer 2 — Select the size and type of paper that is loaded in the 2nd Drawer.

Drawer 3 — Select the size and type of paper that is loaded in the 3rd Drawer (optional) when it is installed.

**Drawer 4** — Select the size and type of paper that is loaded in the 4th Drawer (optional) when it is installed. **LCF** — Select the size and type of paper that is loaded in the Large Capacity Feeder (optional) when it is installed. **External LCF** — Select the size and type of paper that is loaded in the External Large Capacity Feeder (optional) when it is installed.

**Bypass Tray** — Select the type of paper that is loaded in the Bypass Tray.

**Override Application Paper Source Settings** — Select this check box to use the paper source setting in the printer driver rather than the application setting.

Tips

- · Setup items differ depending on the model and the option configuration.
- For more information about each item, see the descriptions about the Drawer Settings.
   P.71 "Drawer Settings"

**6** Click [Apply] or [OK] to save settings.

# Setting the department code

When this equipment is managed by department codes, you have to enter yours on the printer driver. This allows a network administrator to check the number of copies printed by specific department members. Also users can check who submitted the print jobs, by touch panel display and monitoring tools. Please ask your administrator whether you should enter the Department Code.

#### Notes

- When the User Management setting is enabled, it is used to manage a print job instead of the Department Code Management setting. In this case, a user name that has been entered to log in to your computer is used for the authentication of the print job. Therefore, you do not need to set your department code to the printer driver but you must register your user name in advance. If your user name is not registered, the print job is processed as an invalid one according to the User Authentication Enforcement setting. Also if a print job is sent in RAW format, it is processed according to the RAW Print Job setting. For more information about the User Authentication Enforcement setting or the RAW Print Job setting, refer to the **TopAccess Guide**.
- If the No Limit Black function is enabled, you do not have to specify the department code when you print a
  document with [Black and White] selected for the [Color] option in the [Basic] tab of printer driver.

#### Tips

- How the equipment performs printing for an invalid department code print job, for which an invalid department code is specified, varies depending on the Invalid Department Code Print Job setting that can be set in the TopAccess Administrator mode and whether SNMP communication is enabled or not.
  - When SNMP communication is enabled and Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Store to invalid job list], an error message will be displayed when an invalid department code is entered.
  - When SNMP communication is disabled and Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Store to invalid job list], the invalid department code print job will be stored in the invalid department code print job list without printing.
  - When the Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Print], the invalid department code print job will be printed.
  - When the Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Delete], the invalid department code print job will be deleted.
- A department code needs to be entered every time you begin printing. If you have to use a different department code for each print job, enter it when you begin printing.

#### Entering department code

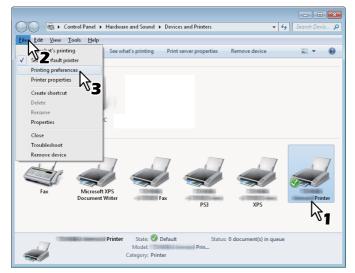
## Click [Start] menu and select [Devices and Printers].

The Printers folder appears.

#### Tips

- For Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008 Click [Start] menu, [Control Panel], [Hardware and Sound] and select [Printers].
- For Windows XP or Windows Server 2003 click [Start] menu and select [Printers and Faxes].

2 Select the printer driver of this equipment, and then click [File] menu and select [Printing Preferences].



- If the [File] menu is not displayed, press [Alt].
- The printing preferences dialog box appears.

# **3** Display the [Others] tab menu and enter your department code in the [Department Code] box.

🖶 Printer Printing Preferences			
Basic Finishing Paper Handling Image Quality Effect Others Templates			
Print Job:	Default Menu Setting	> TopAccess	
	Toger Save Do not Print Blank Pages Letterhead Print Mode SMMP Communication Output Devices	SNMP Settings	
123     123       123     123       Profile:     None       Save Profile     Dejete       Restore Defaults	<u>C</u> ustom Paper Size <u>U</u> ser name (Alias): <u>U</u> ser001         Department Code:       1234567890         Custom Settings File: <u>Im</u> Rgstore All Defaults	Poor Export	
	ОК	Cancel Apply Help	

In the [Department Code] box, you can enter a department code within 63 characters.

Tip

A department code must consist of one-byte characters such as numbers from 0 to 9, letters of the alphabet from A to Z (both capital and small ones), a hyphen (-), an underscore (\_), and a period (.).

# ▲ Click [Apply] or [OK] to save the settings.

#### Copying the PPD file for Windows

The Client Utilities CD-ROM contains a printer description file for popular Windows applications. For applications not allowing the automatic installation of PPD files, copy the PPD file to a proper directory in order to enable printer-specific settings in the [Print] dialog box or the [Page] Setup dialog box.

For more information about copying PPD files, refer to the Software Installation Guide.

# **Printing From Application**

This section describes how to print a document from application.
□ P.16 "Considerations and limitations"
□ P.16 "How to print"

# Considerations and limitations

- When the User Management setting is enabled, it is used to manage a print job instead of the Department Code Management setting. In this case, a user name that has been entered to log in to your computer is used for the authentication of the print job. Therefore, you do not need to set your department code to the printer driver but you must register your user name in advance. If your user name is not registered, the print job is processed as an invalid one according to the User Authentication Enforcement setting. Also if a print job is sent in RAW format, it is processed according to the RAW Print Job setting. For more information about the User Authentication Enforcement setting or the RAW Print Job setting, refer to the **TopAccess Guide**.
- When the Windows Domain Authentication is used for the User Management Setting, your computer must log in the domain.
- If the No Limit Black function is enabled, you do not have to specify the department code when you print a document selecting [Black and White] in the [Color] option in the [Basic] tab of printer driver.
- Some print options can be set from both the application and the printer driver, such as collation. If the collation is set from the application, documents may not be properly printed. If that happens, use the printer driver to set the collation. Depending on the application, some print options such as the orientation need to be set from the application. For print options that can be set from both the application and the driver, refer to the manual of the application.

#### Cautionary points when using a PS printer driver

- When printing with a PS printer driver from Adobe Acrobat, this option is disabled. To use this option with PostScript, use a PCL Printer driver, click [Customization] on the [Device Settings] tab, and select [PostScript] in the [Output PDL] box of the [PDL Settings] tab.
- When any of the following functions is set in a PS printer driver, the print function will work appropriately even if print
  data are generated in the application side since this happens in the printer driver side by ignoring the pass-through
  printing of the application.
  - Print to Overlay file
  - Print Overlay Image
  - Nin1
  - Booklet
  - Interleave (Duplicate)
  - Templates printing
  - Print Paper Size
  - Image Scale
  - Poster Print
  - Tandem Print

# How to print

Once you have installed the printer driver and configured it properly, you can print directly from most Windows applications. Simply choose the Print command from your application. You can print using the various functions by setting print options on the printer driver.

#### **Printing from Windows applications**

The following describes an example for printing from Notepad on Windows 7.

# **1** Open a file and select [Print] from the [File] menu of the applications.

The [Print] dialog box appears.

**2** Select the printer driver of the equipment to be used and click [Preferences].

ieneral		
Select Printer		
	Printer	
	لية.	1
	° I	
•		• III
Status:	Ready	Print to file Preferences
Location:		Find Printer
Comment		ring nintei
Page Range		
💿 All		Number of copies: 1
Selection	Current Page	
Pages:		Collate

The printing preferences dialog box appears.

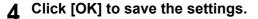
	r
14	 k

The procedures for displaying the properties dialog for the printer driver may be different depending on the application that you are using. See your application's manual about displaying the printer properties dialog box.

3 Setting the print options on each tab according to how you want to print.

Normal Print	Original Paper Size:       Letter (8 1/2 × 11")       ↓       Print Paper Size:       Image Scale:       Same as Driginal Size       100       24(25-400)
	Esper Source: Auto Paper Type: Plain Dgstination: Exik Tray
U 1.2.3 U 2.3 Settings Profile: None ▼ Save Profile Dejete	Number of Copies: 1 (1-999) Drientation: I I Chardscape
Restore Defaults	Color:

- Setting the print options varies depending on how you want to print a document.
   P.26 "Print options"
- You can also set the print options using setting profiles.
   P.20 "Setting print options using profiles"



# **5** Click [Print] to print a document.

🖶 Print	
General	
Select Printer	
Printer	
•	4
Status: Ready	Print to file Preferences
Location: Comment:	Find Printer
Commeric.	
Page Range	
Selection Current Page	Number of <u>c</u> opies: 1
Pages:	Collate
	12 <sup>3</sup> 12 <sup>3</sup>
·	Print Cancel Apply
( <u></u>	

# **Setting Up Print Options**

Print Options are the attributes you set to define the way a print job is processed. For example, the private print and proof print options determine how the copier manages your print job.

Tip

To find the printing instructions for your specific needs, see the procedures in the following section. P.78 "Printing With Best Functions for Your Needs"

# How to set up

There are several ways to set print options. How the settings affect printing varies depending on the way you set the options. The tabs displayed also vary depending on how you display the printer properties.

# □ Setting initial values of print options

Setting the print options by displaying the printer properties from the Printers folder within the Windows Start menu will establish the initial values of the options. For example, the paper size setting you most commonly use, optional device settings, user information settings, etc., are settings you will not want to change every time you print. It is convenient to set these options as initial values.

#### How to display: Windows 7

- Click the [Start] menu and select [Devices and Printers].
- **2** Select the printer driver of your equipment, click the [File] menu and select [Printing Preferences].

If the [File] menu is not displayed, press [Alt].

#### How to display: Windows Vista / Windows Server 2008

- Click [Start], [Control Panel], [Hardware and Sound] and select [Printers].
- 2 Select the printer driver for the equipment, click the [File] menu and select [Printing Preferences].

If the [File] menu is not displayed, press [Alt].

#### How to display: Windows XP / Windows Server 2003

- Click [Start] menu and select [Printers and Faxes].
- 2 Select the printer driver for the equipment, click the [File] menu and select [Printing Preferences].

# Setting print options for each print job

The print options that are set in properties dialog box, which can be accessed from the [Print] dialog box of the application, are only applied to the current print job, so once you close the application, the options will be invalid.

#### How to display:

- Click the [File] menu and select [Print] on application.
- **2** Select the printer driver of the equipment to be used and click [Preferences].

# □ Setting print options using profiles

Using profiles, you can save the print settings or apply the saved settings to a print job.

Tip

There are 5 factory default profiles.

- BW, Duplex, Staple & 2in1
- Color Booklet
- Duplex & Staple
- Duplex, Staple & 2in1
- Duplex, Staple & Punch

In order to print a document using profiles, you must first create the saved profile.
P.20 "Saving profile"
Once you save a profile, you can apply its settings to a print job.
P.21 "Loading profile"
You can also delete unnecessary profiles.
P.22 "Deleting profile"

#### Saving profile

You can register up to 20 profiles (including 5 default profiles) for each printer driver.

#### Tip

You can delete the default profile or overwrite it by changing its contents and saving it under the same name.

#### **1** Configure the print options on each tab.

Setting the print options varies depending on how you want to print a document. P.26 "Print options"

## **2** Click [Save Profile] in the Profile group.

Printing Preferences Basic Finishing Paper Handlin	g Image Quality Effect Others Templates
Print           Normal Print	Driginal Paper Sige:         Letter (8 1/2 x 11")         Print Paper Size:         Same as Driginal Size         Deper Source:         Auto         Paper Type:         Plain         Plain         Exit Tray
Settings Profile: None  Save Profile Dejete	Nymber of Copies: 1 (1-999) Drientation: 1 (1-999) @ Poptrait © Lagdscape
Rest	Color:
	OK Cancel Help

The [Profile Name] dialog box appears.

**3** Enter the profile name and click [OK].

Profile Name		2
<u>P</u> rofile Name:	File01	
	OK Canc	el

The file name must be up to 63 characters long.

#### Tips

- If you enter an existing profile name, you are prompted to confirm whether you want to overwrite it. If you want, click [OK].
- If you try to save more than 20 profiles, a dialog box notifying you that no more can be saved appears, then the 21st profile is saved as a temporary profile. If you want to register this temporary profile, delete unnecessary profiles first, and then select [Temporary Profile] to recall this profile and click [Save Profile] to save it.
- You cannot specify [None] for the profile name.

# **1** The profile is saved.

#### Loading profile

Basic Finishing Paper Handling Image Print Job:	Original Paper Sige: Letter (8 1/2 x 11") ▼ Print Paper Sige: Image Scale:
	Letter (8 1/2 x 11'') ▼ Print Paper Size: □ Image Scale:
	Same as Original Size   100  4(25-400)  Eaper Source: Auto Paper Type: Plain Destination: Exit Tray
SettingsNu Profile: None	mber of Copies: 1 (1-393) entation: I Contrait O Portrait Conducate
Color Booklet	Poţtrait     O Rogtrait     O Rogtrait

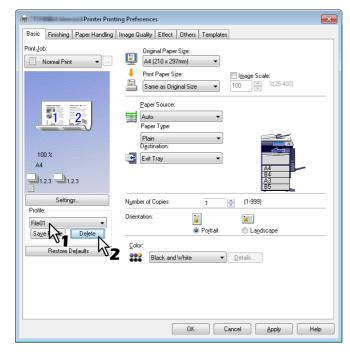
The setting options in the profile are reflected on each tab.

#### Note

To restore the default settings after you select the profile, click [Restore Defaults] on each tab. Selecting [None] on the [Profile] box will not restore them. To restore the default settings on any tab other than the [Device Settings] tabs, click [Restore All Defaults] on the [Others] tab.

## **Deleting profile**





The [Confirm Delete] dialog box appears.

# **2** Click [Yes] to delete the selected profile.



# □ Setting up print options with Template Buttons

Once you save a profile to a Template Button, the [Templates] dialog box automatically appears upon printing, and you can immediately apply the saved profile to a print job only by selecting this Template Button.

#### Tip

5 factory default profiles are registered in a Template Button.

- BW, Duplex, Staple & 2in1
- Color Booklet
- Duplex & Staple
- Duplex, Staple & 2in1
- Duplex, Staple & Punch

To use a Template Button, you must first save a profile to this button. Also you must set a dialog box for selecting Template Buttons to appear automatically upon printing.

P.23 "Saving a profile to the Template Button"

You can apply the saved profile to a print job by selecting the Template Button upon printing.

P.24 "Printing with profiles in a Template Button"

You can delete a Template Button if it is no longer required.

P.25 "Deleting a profile saved in a Template Button"

#### Saving a profile to the Template Button

You can create up to 6 Template Buttons, including 5 default buttons.

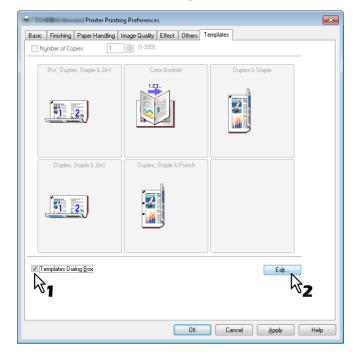
#### Note

You can delete any of the default Template Buttons.

#### Save the desired print options as a profile.

P.20 "Saving profile"

- **?** Select the [Templates] tab.
- 3 Select the [Templates Dialog Box] check box.



The [Templates] dialog box appears automatically in printing.



#### Click [Edit].

The [Edit Templates] dialog box appears.

**5** Select a profile to be saved in the [Profile] box.

Edit Templa	ates			×
Profile:	File01	- N		
Select Profi	ile and Template which you w	ant to est		
BW	V, Duplex, Staple & 2in1	Color Booklet	Duplex & Staple	
	1 2			
	Duplex, Staple & 2in1	Duplex, Staple & Punch		
	1 .2.		<b>⊳₂</b>	
	OK		Save Del Cancel 3	ete

# **6** Select a Template Button to which the chosen profile is saved.

#### Tip

If you select a Template Button that is already registered, the profile saved in this button is replaced with a new one.

#### 7 Click [Save] and then [OK].

The chosen profile is saved in the selected Template Button.

**8** Click [OK] on the [Template] tab.

The saved profile is registered.

#### Printing with profiles in a Template Button

**1** The [Templates] dialog box appears automatically when printing is started.



# **2** Select a Template Button to be applied.

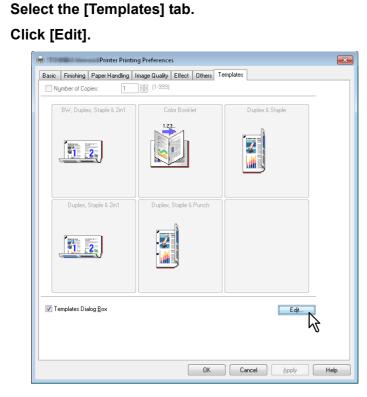
Printing is performed with the profile saved in the selected Template Button.

Tips

- To set the number of copies, select the [Number of Copies] check box.
- To print without applying profiles, click [Skip].

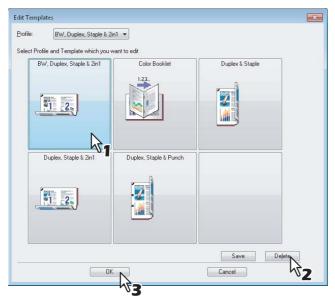
#### Deleting a profile saved in a Template Button

1 2



The [Edit Templates] dialog box appears.

**3** Select a Template Button whose profile needs to be deleted.



# **4** Click [Delete] and then [OK].

The profile in the selected Template Button is deleted. The Template Button is left blank.

# Print options

This section describes print options in each tab of the printer driver. This section will help you to find the description of specific print options, or understand their individual functions.

#### Tip

The following tabs are the setting items which depend on the OS. For their setting procedures and details, refer to the Operator's Manual or the Help of the OS to be used.

- [General] tab
- [Sharing] tab
- [Ports] tab
- [Advanced] tab
- [Color Management] tab
- [Security] tab

#### How to display:

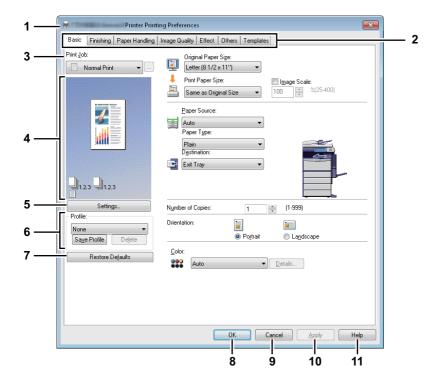
#### **1** Click [Start] menu and select [Devices and Printers]. The Printers folder appears.

Tips

- For Windows Vista or Windows Server 2008 Click [Start] menu, [Control Panel], [Hardware and Sound] and select [Printers].
  For Windows XP or Windows Server 2003
  - Click [Start] menu and select [Printers and Faxes].

# **2** Select the printer driver of this equipment, and then click [File] menu and select [Printing Preferences].

- If the [File] menu is not displayed, press [Alt].
- The printing preferences dialog box appears.



#### 1) Printer Name

Displays the name given to the printer driver when it was installed, or the name it displays on the icon in the Printer folder.

#### 2) Menu Tabs

The menu items of the printer driver are displayed as tabs. Clicking on a tab will display the contents of the selected tab. The tabs displayed vary depending on the way the print properties are displayed.

- [Basic] tab

The [Basic] tab contains basic print operation settings, such as original paper size, print paper size, paper source, paper type, destination, number of copies, orientation, and so on.

- [Finishing] tab

The [Finishing] tab allows you to enable sort printing, 2-sided printing, N-up printing, stapling and punching. P.35 "[Finishing] tab"

- [Paper Handling] tab
   The [Paper Handling] tab contains Cover page printing.
   P.43 "[Paper Handling] tab"
- [Image Quality] tab

The [Image Quality] tab allows you to select how images are printed. You can easily select appropriate image quality depending on the type of job being printed.

P.49 "[Image Quality] tab"

#### [Effect] tab

The [Effect] tab contains print options that add the effects to your print jobs such as Watermarks, Overlay Image printing and so on.

P.57 "[Effect] tab"

[Others] tab

The [Others] tab contains special features such as toner save, custom pager size, and so on.  $\square$  P.63 "[Others] tab"

[Templates] tab

The [Templates] tab allows you to register print options frequently used as a template, or recall the registered print options.

P.76 "[Templates] tab"

[Device Settings] tab

The [Device Settings] tab allows you to configure the options. When any optional unit is installed in this equipment, set the configuration of the machine on this tab. This tab is only displayed when the printer properties are accessed from the Printers folder.

P.69 "[Device Settings] tab"

#### Note

The [Paper Handling] tab, [Image Quality] tab, [Effect] tab and [Templates] tab appear only when each setting is enabled with the Plug-in feature.

P.73 "Customization: [Plug-in] tab"

#### 3) Print Job

This sets the type of print job.

- Normal Print
- Select this to print a job normally.
- Scheduled Print

Select this to print a job on a specified date and time.

When this is selected, click the [...] on the right of the [Print Job] box to set the date and time to print a job.

- Private Print

Select this option to print a private job. When you select this option, enter a password using the alphanumeric characters and symbol characters (ASCII code characters between 0x21 to 0x7E) in the [Password] box that is displayed after the print settings have been made and the print job is sent. The password must be between 1 and 63 characters.

The print job, sent as a private job, is saved in the private job queue on this equipment, and is not printed until you activate printing from the touch panel display. This option is useful when you want to print a confidential document that is secured by a password. The user has to enter the password to print the private job when activating printing from the touch panel display.

- Hold Print

The print job, sent as a hold job, is saved in the hold job queue on this equipment. To perform printing, select the desired job on the touch panel display and press [PRINT]. This option is useful to prevent you from forgetting to remove printed sheets.

- Proof Print

Select this to print the first copy of a multicopy job and then wait for approval before printing the remaining copies. If a print job is sent as a proof job, one copy of the job is printed and the remaining copies are saved in the proof job queue on this equipment, which are not printed until you activate printing from the touch panel display. This option allows you to check a job's output before printing the remaining copies and thereby reduce paper waste.

#### Note

When you want to print multiple copies, each of which is to be sent as an individual print job by your application, all the copies, not just one copy, will be printed even if you set Proof Print. In such a case, print just one trial copy first, and then specify the required number of copies on the touch panel display.

#### • Print to Overlay File

Select this to save the print job as an overlay file that is imposed on other documents. When you select this, click the button on the right and enter the file name.

For example, if you want to print a master page image on the background of a document, you can create an overlay file of the master merge image using this option. Then you can print a document using this overlay by specifying this file as an overlay image in the [Overlay Image] option of the [Effect] tab.

#### Notes

- If the print job has several pages in the document, only its first page will be saved as an overlay file.
- Both the overlay file and the documents on which you superimpose the overlay image must be created with the same size and color mode.

#### Store to e-Filing

Select this to save a job to e-Filing. When this is selected, select the box from the box after the print setting has been finished. When the SNMP communication is enabled, it detects the available box numbers and Box name in the box. If not, all box numbers are listed in the box.

If you select a user box, you may be required to enter the appropriate password for the selected box. The job saved to a box can be printed from the touch panel display at a later time. It can also be composed with other documents using the e-Filing web utility.

You can also print a job and save it to a box by checking on the [Print] option.

#### Notes

- Documents stored in e-Filing are retained with the best image quality for printing. If you want to download them into your computer with a higher image quality, scan the original documents and store them in e-Filing.
- When you store a document in e-Filing using the printer driver, the printing image (not the original document in your computer) will be stored in e-Filing.

#### Multiple Job Type

The Multiple Job Type feature allows you to combine any of Scheduled Print, Private Print, Hold Print, Proof Print, Proof Private Print and Proof Hold Print, with Store to e-Filing.

For example, you can store a job in the specified e-Filing of this equipment and print it at the specified time by combining Scheduled Print with Store to e-Filing.

To use this feature, click [...] on the right of the [Print Job] box and select the job types to be combined.

Tips

- For more information about e-Filing operations, refer to the e-Filing Guide.
- For the detailed instructions on how to print with the [Print job] setting, see the following page:

#### 4) Preview window

In the Preview window, you can preview how a document will be printed under the current settings of the printer driver. The image of a page to which the set print options are applied is displayed.

#### 5) [Settings]

The set print options and their details are displayed in a list.

#### 6) Profile

Print option settings can be saved on your hard disk. You can save print option settings by clicking [Save Profile] and easily load a setting file by selecting a profile name in the box.

Tip

There are 5 factory default profiles.

#### 7) [Restore Defaults]

Click this to restore the settings to the original factory defaults.

#### 8) [OK]

Click this to enter the input settings and complete the print option settings.

#### 9) [Cancel]

Click this to cancel the input settings and exit the print option settings.

#### 10) [Apply]

Click this to enter the input settings without closing the print option settings. This button is only displayed when the printer properties are accessed from the Printers folder. This button remains grayed out until a setting is changed.

#### 11) [Help]

Click this to browse Help for the printer driver.

# □ [Basic] tab

The [Basic] tab contains basic print operation settings, such as the original paper size, print paper size, paper source, paper type, destination, number of copies, orientation, and so on.

Printer Printing Preferences	
Basic Finishing Paper Handling Image Quality Effect Others Templates	
Print Job:     Original Paper Size:       Normal Print     Image Scale:       Print Paper Size:     Image Scale:       Same as Original Size     100	- 1 - 2 - 3
Paper Source:	- 4
Paper Type:	- 5
Destination:           Destination:           Letter         A4           12.3         12.3	- 6
Settings_ Number of Copies: 1 (1-999)	- 7
Profile:     Orientation:       Sage Profile     Delete       © Potriat     Lagdscape	- 8
Color.  Restore Defaults  Auto  Details	- 9
OK Cancel Apply Help	

#### 1) Original Paper Size

This selects the size of a document to be printed.

Available original paper sizes are listed below:

- A4 (210 x 297 mm)
- A5 (148 x 210 mm)
- A3 (297 x 420 mm)
- B4 (257 x 364 mm)
- B5 (182 x 257 mm)
- Folio (210 x 330 mm)
- 305 x 457 mm
- 12 x 18"
- A6 (105 x 148mm)
- Letter (8 1/2 x 11")
- Legal (8 1/2 x 14")
- Ledger (11 x 17")
- Statement (5 1/2 x 8 1/2")

- Computer (10 1/8 x 14")
- 13"LG (8 1/2 x 13")
- 8.5"SQ (8 1/2 x 8 1/2")
- 16K (195 x 270 mm)
- 8K (270 x 390 mm)
- 320 x 450 mm
- 320 x 460 mm
- Env-Com10 (4 1/8 x 9 1/2")
- Env-Mornarch (3 7/8 x 7 1/2")
- Envelope DL (110 x 220 mm)
- Envelope Cho-3 (120 x 235 mm)
- Envelope You-4 (105 x 235 mm)

#### Tips

- There are also 20 custom paper sizes in the [Original Paper Size] box. You can set the custom paper sizes in the [Others] tab.
  - P.63 "[Others] tab"
- The default paper size will be [Letter] or [A4] according to the regional setting in the Windows.
- [305 x 457 mm] is displayed only for the European version, and [12 x 18"] is displayed only for the US version.
- [305 x 457 mm], [12 x 18"], [320 x 450 mm], and [320 x 460 mm] is enabled only when the ES9460 MFP/ ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP is used.
- [Env-Com10 (4 1/8 x 9 1/2")], [Env-Mornarch (3 7/8 x 7 1/2")], [Envelope DL (110 x 220 mm)], [Envelope Cho-3 (120 x 235 mm)], and [Envelope You-4 (105 x 235 mm)] is enabled only when the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP is used.
- Setup items differ depending on the model.

#### 2) Print Paper Size

Select this to enlarge or reduce a page image to fit exactly in the selected paper size. If you do not wish to enable enlarge or reduce printing, select [Same as Original Size].

Also when you want to enable Tab printing, select [Letter Tab] or [A4 Tab] here. When you select [Letter Tab] or [A4 Tab], the [Primary Tab Dialog] dialog box appears.

P.33 "Primary Tab Dialog"

#### Tip

There are also 20 custom paper sizes in the [Print Paper Size] box. You can set the custom paper sizes in the [Others] tab.

P.63 "[Others] tab"

#### 3) Image Scale

Select this check box to enter the scale manually to enlarge or reduce an image. The ratio can be set at between 25 and 400%.

Tip

For detailed instructions on how to print with the [Image Scale] setting, see the following page:

#### 4) Paper Source

This selects a paper source to print a job in the most suitable paper size. The figure on the right indicates the paper size set for each paper source. When you select a paper source, the chosen one is indicated with a green square in the figure.

Tip

You can select a paper source by directly clicking on the figure on the right.

- Auto — Automatically selects the paper set in this equipment according to the printed document size.

- Drawer 1 Paper is fed from the 1st Drawer.
- Drawer 2 Paper is fed from the 2nd Drawer.
- **Drawer 3** Paper is fed from the 3rd Drawer.
- Drawer 4 Paper is fed from the 4th Drawer.
- LCF Paper is fed from the Large Capacity Feeder (optional). This cannot be selected if the Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is not installed.
- Bypass Tray Paper is fed from the Bypass Tray. When this is selected and print a job, [JOB STATUS] on the touch panel will blink. Press [JOB STATUS] and check the paper size of the job. Then set the paper and press the [START] button to print a job.
- **External LCF** Paper is fed from the External Large Capacity Feeder (optional). This cannot be selected if the External Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is not installed.

#### Notes

- When you select the bypass tray as a paper source but the orientations of the original and the paper on the bypass tray differ, the data in the original are rotated for 90 degrees and printed in the same orientation as that of the original, as long as their paper sizes are the same (this is available only for A4, B5, LT and 16K). For example, when an original is A4 in a portrait direction but the paper on the bypass tray is A4-R, the data of the original are printed in A4 in a portrait direction.
- The selectable values vary depending on the optional devices installed on this equipment and their configuration on the [Device Settings] tab.
- When paper such as special or tab paper that needs to be fed from the bypass tray is set, [Bypass Tray] may be automatically selected in the [Paper Source] box, and then a confirmation dialog box may appear.
- When the paper size settings on the [Device Settings] tab differ from those in the equipment, the paper source setting is ignored and the equipment may prompt to set the paper in the bypass tray.
- The Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is not available for some countries or regions.

#### 5) Paper Type

This sets the media type of the paper.

- Plain (Auto) Select this when printing on plain paper.
- Plain Select this when printing on plain paper.
- Recycled Select this when printing on recycled paper.
- Thick1 Select this when printing on thick 1 paper.
- Thick2 Select this when printing on thick 2 paper.
- Thick3 Select this when printing on thick 3 paper.
- Thick4 Select this when printing on thick 4 paper.
- Special 1 Select this when printing on special 1 paper.
- **Special 2** Select this when printing on special 2 paper.
- Transparency Select this when printing on transparent sheets.
- **Plain1** Select this when printing on plain 1 paper.
- Plain2 Select this when printing on plain 2 paper.
- Thick1 (Back) Select this when printing on the back side of thick 1 paper.
- Thick2 (Back) Select this when printing on the back side of thick 2 paper.
- Thick3 (Back) Select this when printing on the back side of thick 3 paper.
- Thick4 (Back) Select this when printing on the back side of thick 4 paper.
- Special 1 (Back) Select this when printing on the back side of special 1 paper.
- Special 2 (Back) Select this when printing on the back side of special 2 paper.
- Thin Select this when printing on the back side of thin paper.

#### Notes

- The applicable paper weight for each paper type differs depending on the model. For details of the paper weight, refer to the corresponding *Quick Start Guide*.
- When [A4 Tab] or [Letter Tab] is selected at the [Print Paper Size] box, [Tab] will be displayed and you cannot change the paper type.
- Setup items differ depending on the model.

#### Tip

For more information about the paper types that are available for this equipment, refer to the Quick Start Guide.

#### 6) Destination

This selects the tray to which the print job is made to exit. The figure on the right indicates the destination currently set with an arrow.

- Exit Tray Select this to have paper exit to the exit tray.
- **Upper Exit Tray** Select this to have paper exit to the upper exit tray.
- Job Separator Upper Select this to route the upper exit tray of the Job Separator (optional).
- Job Separator Lower Select this to route the lower exit tray of the Job Separator (optional).
- Side Exit Tray Select this to route the output to the side exit tray of this equipment.
- **Tray 1** Select this to route the output to the upper tray of the Finisher (optional).
- **Tray 2** Select this to route the output to the lower tray of the Finisher (optional).
- Saddle Tray Select this to route the output to the saddle tray of the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional).

#### Notes

- The selectable items differ depending on the model and the option configuration.
- The destination is limited to [Saddle Tray] when you perform folding print or saddle stitch print with the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) installed.

#### Tips

- · You can select the tray by directly clicking on the figure on the right.
- Select [Tray 1] if you want to reduce the initialization period if the Finisher (optional) is installed.

#### 7) Number of Copies

This sets the number of printed copies. This can be set at between 1 and 9999.

#### Note

The selectable range of the number of copies:

1 copy to 999 copies

#### 8) Orientation

This sets the paper printing direction.

- Portrait The document is printed in the portrait direction.
- Landscape The document is printed in the landscape direction.

9) Color

This sets whether a print job is printed in the color or black mode.

- <u>Auto</u> Select this to determine the color mode automatically. When a print job is a black and white document, the system automatically prints the document in the black mode. When a print job is a color document, it prints the document in the color mode.
- Color Select this to print a document in the color mode.
- Black and White Select this to print a document in the black mode.
- Twin Color Select this to print a document in the twin color mode. When this is selected, click [Details] to specify the color that the non-black part of document will be printed in. You can select either [Red], [Green], [Blue], [Cyan], [Magenta], [Yellow], or [White].

Tip

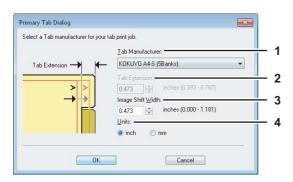
For instructions on how to print color images with the [Black and White] or [Twin Color] setting, see the following page:

P.92 "Printing color documents in twin colors"

#### Note

[Color] is enabled only when the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP is used.

#### **Primary Tab Dialog**



#### 1) Tab Manufacturer

Select the product name of the tab paper that you use. This equipment supports following tab paper.

For Letter Tab:	Blanks USA copy Tabs (5 Banks) LT + 1/2" Tab Blanks USA copy Tabs (8 Banks) LT + 1/2" Tab
For A4 Tab:	KOKUYO A4-S (5 Banks) King JIM A4-S (5 Banks)

If you use tab papers other than those above, select [Custom]. When you select [Custom], you must specify the tab extension manually.

#### 2) Tab Extension

Enter the width of the tab extension. This must be set only when [Custom] is selected in the [Tab Manufacturer] option.

#### 3) Image Shift Width

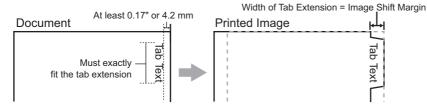
Enter the width to shift the printed image.

For example, if you want to print text on the tab extension of Letter Tab paper, create a Letter sized document and input the text on the right side. Specify the distance the printed image is shifted in printing on tab paper.

#### Notes

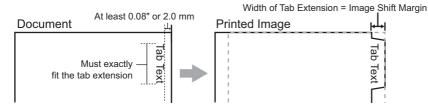
- When creating a document for tab printing, you must place the text at the exact height to fit the tab extension.
- The selectable range of the edge margin differs depending on the model. See the following for setting this
  option:
  - For the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP

The margin between the shifted text and right edge of the tab extension must have at least 0.17 inches (4.2 mm) of space because any data in this space are not printed. Enter the same value in the [Tab Extension] box and the [Image Shift Width] box.



#### - For the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP

The margin between the shifted text and right edge of the tab extension must have at least 0.08 inches (2.0 mm) of space because any data in this space are not printed. Enter the same value in the [Tab Extension] box and the [Image Shift Width] box.



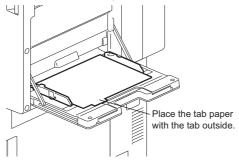
For models other than the above, refer to the corresponding *Printing Guide*.

#### 4) Units

Select the unit for the Tab Extension and Image Shift option. The default unit varies depending on the regional setting of the client computer.

#### Notes

• Tab paper must be fed from the bypass tray. Make sure to place it with its tab outside. The shape of the bypass tray differs depending on the model.



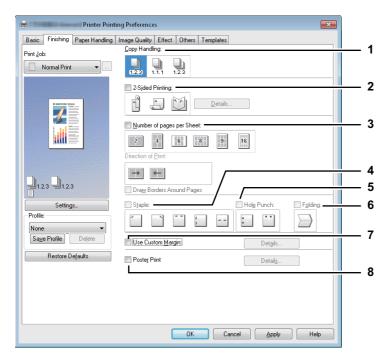
- The tab paper cannot be fed from the Large Capacity Feeder (optional) and drawers.
- If the document for tab printing is not created properly or the [Image Shift Width] is not set properly, the image will not be printed in the correct position within the tab extension. Please make sure to create the document and set the [Image Shift Width] correctly.
- If misprinting occurs while multiple tab pages are printed continuously, dirt may adhere to the reverse side of paper. To avoid this, it is recommended to print tab paper as a separate job for each page so that this equipment performs cleaning before printing the next tab paper.
- When printing tab paper, the tab paper may be caught in the exit in the inner tray because the roller to deliver the tab extension does not exit. In that case, remove the tab paper before printing a next job.



For the detailed instructions on how to print on tab paper, see the following page:  $\square$  P.108 "Printing on tab paper"

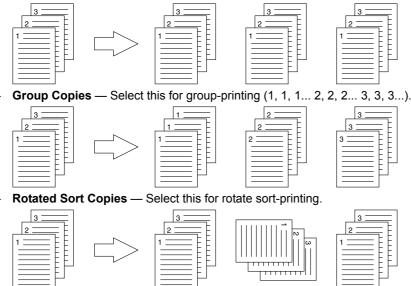
# □ [Finishing] tab

The [Finishing] tab allows you to enable sort printing, 2-sided printing, N-up printing, poster printing, stapling and punching.



### 1) Copy Handling

- This sets how to sort the printed sheets when numerous copies are made for printing.
  - Sort Copies Select this for sort-printing (1, 2, 3... 1, 2, 3...).



# Notes

- [Group Copies] and [Rotated Sort Copies] can be selected only when more than 1 copy is entered at the Number of Copies option.
- [Rotated Sort Copies] can be selected only when [Letter], [A4], [B5], or [16K] is selected at the Print Paper Size option. When you use the "Rotated Sort Copies" option, place copy paper of a desired size in two drawers (portrait and landscape directions) before you start printing. Select one paper size from [Letter], [A4], [B5] and [16K], and then place the selected paper in two drawers, the Large Capacity Feeder (optional) trays or the External Large Capacity Feeder (optional) tray in different directions (e.g. A4 and A4-R) in advance.

Tip

For the detailed instructions on how to print with the [Copy Handling] setting, see the following page:

### 2) 2-Sided Printing

- This sets printing on both sides of paper. Select this check box and then the position of the margin for 2-sided printing.
- Long Edge Select this to print on both sides of the paper with a margin on the long edge.



- Short Edge — Select this to print on both sides of the paper with a margin on the short edge.

Portrait	Landscape

Booklet — Select this to print a properly paginated booklet or magazine-style publication. When this is selected, click [Details] to specify the details of the Booklet printing.
 P.41 "Booklet Details"



### Notes

- 2-Sided printing cannot be set when the following paper size is selected at the [Print Paper Size] box in the [Basic] tab.
  - A6
  - A4 Tab
  - Letter Tab
  - Custom Paper Size
- 2-Sided printing cannot be set when the following paper type in selected at the [Paper Type] box in the [Basic] tab.
  - Transparency
  - Thick4
  - Thick4 (Back)

Tips

- To staple or punch holes on the 2-sided printed sheets, set each option separately.
  - P.98 "Hole punching"
- For detailed instructions on how to print with the [2-Sided Printing] setting, see the following page:

### 3) Number of pages per Sheet

This sets the printing of multiple pages on one sheet. The pages are reduced to fit the selected paper size automatically and printed.

- **2 pages** Select this to print images from 2 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 4 pages Select this to print images from 4 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 6 pages Select this to print images from 6 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 8 pages Select this to print images from 8 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 9 pages Select this to print images from 9 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 16 pages Select this to print images from 16 pages arranged on one sheet.

### **Direction of Print**

This sets how the pages are arranged on one sheet.

- Left to Right Select this to arrange pages horizontally from the left and printed top to bottom on one sheet.
- **Right to Left** Select this to arrange pages horizontally from the right and printed top to bottom on one sheet. - Left to Right by column — Select this to arrange pages vertically from the top and printed left to right on one
- sheet. Right to Left by column — Select this to arrange pages vertically from the top and printed right to left on one sheet.

#### **Draw Borders Around Pages**

Select this check box to print borders around each page.

### Tips

- When you select [Booklet] in the [2-Sided Printing] box, only [2 pages] can be selected.
- ٠ For the detailed instructions on how to print with the [Number of pages per Sheet] setting, see the following page:

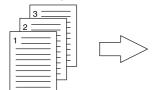
P.97 "Printing several pages on one sheet"

#### 4) Staple

- This sets whether a print job is printed with staples.
- **Upper Left** Select this to staple the printed document in the upper left.

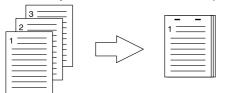


Upper Right — Select this to staple the printed document in the upper right.



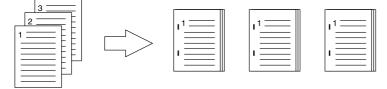
1`	1

**Center Top** — Select this to double staple the printed document along the top edge.

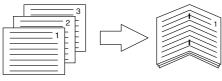


Π	-	-
	1	

**Middle Left** — Select this to double staple the printed document along the left side.



- **Center Double** — Select this to fold and double-staple the printed document in the center. When you select this, the pages will be printed on the sheets according to the print option settings, and then simply fold and double-staple in the center of the sheets.



# Tip

[Center Double] can be used to create a saddle-stitching for a document that has already been made as a paginated booklet. To create a paginated booklet from a normal document, perform the booklet printing in the 2-Sided Printing option. When [Center Double] is used, select the [Staple Down the Center] check box in the [Booklet Details] dialog box.

# Notes

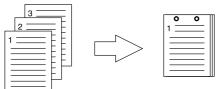
- The selectable options vary depending on the paper size.
- The "Staple" option is available only when the Finisher (optional) is installed.
- [Center Double] can be selected only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed.
- The "Staple" option is not available when the Group Copies / Magazine sort function is selected.
- Stapling cannot be set when the following paper sizes are selected in the [Print Paper Size] box in the [Basic] tab.
  - A5
  - A6
  - 305 x 457 mm
  - Statement
  - 12 x 18"
  - A4 Tab
  - Letter Tab
  - 320 x 450 mm
  - 320 x 460 mm
  - 13 x 19"
  - Custom Paper Size
  - Stapling cannot be set when the following paper types are selected at the [Paper Type] box in the [Basic] tab.
    - Thick 4
    - Special 1
    - Special 2
    - Transparency
    - Thick 4 (Back)
    - Special 1 (Back)
    - Special 2 (Back)

### Tip

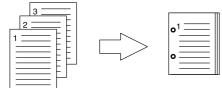
For detailed instructions on how to print with the [Staple] setting, see the following page:

### 5) Hole Punch

- This sets whether a print job is printed with hole punches.
  - Center Top Select this to create holes along the top edge and print.



Middle Left — Select this to create holes along the left side and print.



# Notes

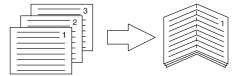
- Hole punching can be selected only when a Hole Punch Unit (optional) is installed.
- The "Hole Punch" option is not available when the Magazine sort function is selected.
- The selectable options vary depending on the paper size.

### Tip

For the detailed instructions on how to print with the [Hole Punch] setting, see the following page:

### 6) Folding

Select this check box if you want to have the printed paper folded when it exits. If this option is selected, the job is printed according to the other print options set, and then exits with its center folded.



### Tip

The Folding option is used when the Booklet option is selected in advance. If you apply the Booklet option in a normal page order, select [Booklet] in the [2-Sided Printing] box.

If you apply the Folding option, set [Booklet] in the [2-Sided Printing] box, click [Details], open the [Booklet Details] dialog box and then select the [Folding] check box.

#### Note

The Folding option is available only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed in either the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP, or the Saddle Stitch Finisher MJ-1106 (optional) is installed in the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP.

#### Tip

For detailed instructions on how to print with the Folding option, see the following page:  $\square$  P.94 "Making a booklet"

# 7) Use Custom Margin

Select this check box to set the margin on the printed pages. When this box is selected, click [Details] to set the margins in the [Custom Margin] dialog box.

The selectable range of the margin width differs depending on the model.

- The selectable range of the margin width:
  - 0.17 inch to 3.94 inches / 4.2 mm to 100 mm (The margin width cannot be smaller than 0.17 inches / 4.2 mm.)

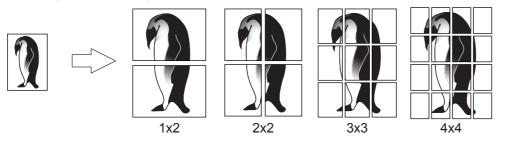
For models other than the above, refer to the corresponding *Printing Guide*.

# Notes

- If [Booklet] is selected on [2-Sided Printing], this option will be disabled.
- Enable this function to add the margins if the application does not support the margin function. When the
- application has a margin function, use the application's function rather than this option.
- This cannot specify the binding margin for Booklet printing.

### 8) Poster Print

You can divide a print job onto more than one sheet of paper, so you can create one large image, such as a poster, by connecting the divided images. If this option is enabled, click [Details] and set the Output number of Sheets.



# Notes

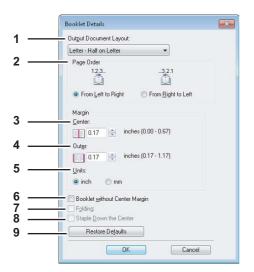
- The Poster Print option is not available when any of the Custom Paper Size, Number of pages per sheet, 2-Sided Printing, Watermark, Overlay Image and Sheet Insertion options is set.
- The Poster Print option is available only when any of the sizes below is selected for [Print Paper Size] box on the [Basic] tab.
  - A4, A3, LT, LG
- [1x2] is selectable only when A4 or A3 is chosen for [Print Paper Size].

# Tip

For detailed instructions on how to print with the Poster Print option, see the following page: P.99 "Dividing one image into multiple sheets (Poster Print)"

# **Booklet Details**

In the [Booklet Details] dialog box, you can specify how Booklet printing is performed.



#### 1) Output Document Layout

Select the booklet size to be made.

- A5 on A4 Select this to print an A5 size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on A4 paper to fit on half a sheet (A5).
- A4 on A3 Select this to print an A4 size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on A3 paper to fit on half a sheet (A4).
- B5 on B4 Select this to print a B5 size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on B4 paper to fit on half a sheet (B5).
- B6 on B5 Select this to print a B6 size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on B5 paper to fit on half a sheet (B6).
- **1/2 Folio on Folio** Select this to print a 1/2 Folio size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on Folio paper to fit on half a sheet.
- A6 on A5 Select this to print an A6 size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on A5 paper to fit on half a sheet (A6).
- Letter-Half on Letter Select this to print a 1/2 Letter size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on Letter paper to fit on half a sheet.
- LT on LD Select this to print a Letter size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on Ledger paper to fit on half a sheet (Letter).
- 1/2 LG on LG Select this to print a 1/2 Legal size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on Legal paper to fit on half a sheet.
- **1/2 Statement on Statement** Select this to print a 1/2 Statement size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on Statement paper to fit on half a sheet.
- 1/2 Comp on Comp Select this to print a 1/2 Computer size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on Computer
  paper to fit on half a sheet.
- 1/2 13LG on 13LG Select this to print a 1/2 13 inch LG size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on 13 inch LG paper to fit on half a sheet.
- 1/2 8.5SQ on 8.5SQ Select this to print a 1/2 8.5 inch SQ size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on 8.5 inch SQ paper to fit on half a sheet.
- 32K on 16K Select this to print a 32K size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on 16K paper to fit on half a sheet.
- **16K on 8K** Select this to print a 16K size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on 8K paper to fit on half a sheet.

#### 2) Page Order

Select this to print the pages from left to right or right to left.

### 3) Margin - Center

This sets the gutter in the center of a two-sided page. You can enter the value between 0 and 0.67 inches (0 and 16.90 mm). The printed images will be reduced according to the margin setting.

#### 4) Margin - Outer

This sets the gutter on the right side and left side on the paper. You can enter the value between 0.17 and 1.17 inches (4.20 and 29.60 mm). The printed images will be reduced according to the margin setting.

#### 5) Margin - Units

Select the unit for the Center Margin and Outer Margin option. The default unit varies depending on the regional setting in the Windows.

#### 6) Booklet without Center Margin

Select this to set the center margin of the paper to 0 inch (mm). In this case the value set for [Margin - Center] becomes invalid.

# 7) Folding

Select this to have the paper folded at its center when it exits.

# Notes

- The Folding option is available only when any of the finishing sizes below is selected. [A5 on A4], [A4 on A3], [B5 on B4], [Letter - Half on Letter], [LT on LD], [1/2 LG on LG], [16K on 8K]
- The Folding option is available only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed in either the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP, or the Saddle Stitch Finisher MJ-1106 (optional) is installed in the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP.

### 8) Staple Down the Center

Select this check box to double-staple in the center.

# Note

[Staple Down the Center] is available only when [A5 on A4], [A4 on A3], [B5 on B4], [Letter - Half on Letter], [LT on LD], [1/2 LG on LG], or [16K on 8K] is selected at the [Output Document Layout] box and the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed.

# 9) [Restore Defaults]

Click this to restore the settings displayed in the [Booklet Details] dialog box to the original factory defaults.

### Tip

For detailed instructions on how to print with the [Booklet] setting, see the following page:

# [Paper Handling] tab

The [Paper Handling] tab allows you to enable Front Cover printing, Back Cover printing, Inserting Pages, and Interleaving Pages.

# Notes

- "Use Front Cover", "Use Back Cover", "Insert Pages" and "Interleave Pages" are not available when the Tab printing function is set.
- When the size of covers or sheets to be inserted is the same as that of the copy paper, change the media type or specify "Paper Source" on the [Basic] tab menu; otherwise all data will be printed from the insertion drawer.
- If you select [Store to e-Filing] in the [Print job] box, [Use Front Cover], [Use Back Cover], [Insert Pages] and [Interleave Pages] are unselectable.

🖶 🕞 Printer Print	ting Preferences	
Basic Finishing Paper Handling	Image Quality Effect Others Templates	
Print Job:	Use Front Cover:	1
Normal Print -	Source: Print Style:	- 1
	Auto     Do not print on page	
	Use Back Cover.	— 2
	Source: Print Style:	-
	Auto  v Do not print on page  v	
	Insert Pages:	— 3
	Pages:	
	Edit	_ 4
	Source:	
1.2.3	Auto	
	Duplicate	
Settings Profile:		
None   Save Profile  Delete		
Dejete		
Restore Defaults		
	OK Cancel Apply Help	

### 1) Use Front Cover

This sets front cover printing which allows you to insert or print a cover on a sheet fed from a different Drawer or Bypass tray other than the Paper Source option selected on the [Basic] tab.

To enable cover printing, select the check box and select the location from where a cover sheet is to be fed and the print style to be used.

Tip

For detailed instructions on how to print with the [Use Front Cover] setting, see the following page:

#### Source

Select the location from where a front cover sheet is to be fed. When [Auto] is selected, the paper is automatically selected according to the printed document size.

### Note

The selectable values in the [Source] box vary depending on the optional devices installed on this equipment and their configuration on the [Device Settings] tab.

### Print Style

This selects how you want to print a front cover.

- **Do not print on page** Select this to insert a blank cover.
- Print one side of the page Select this to print the first page image on the front side of a cover.
- **Print both sides of page** Select this to print the first two page images on both sides of a cover. This is available only when the 2-Sided Printing option is enabled on the [Finishing] tab.

### Note

If [Print one side of the page] is selected while 2-Sided Printing is performed, the first page is printed on the front side of the cover sheet and the back side of the cover will be blank.

#### 2) Use Back Cover

This sets back cover printing which allows you to insert or print a back cover on a sheet fed from a different Drawer or Bypass tray other than the Paper Source option selected on the [Basic] tab.

To enable back cover printing, select the check box and select the location from where a back cover sheet is to be fed and the print style to be used.

Tip

For detailed instructions on how to print with the [Use Back Cover] setting, see the following page:

#### Source

Select the location from where a back cover sheet is to be fed. When [Auto] is selected, the paper is automatically selected according to the printed document size.

### Note

The selectable values in the [Source] box vary depending on the optional devices installed on this equipment and their configuration on the [Device Settings] tab.

#### **Print Style**

This selects how you want to print a back cover.

- Do not print on page Select this to insert a blank cover.
- Print one side of the page Select this to print the last page image on the front side of a cover.
- **Print both sides of page** Select this to print the last two page images on both sides of a cover. This is available only when the 2-Sided Printing option is enabled on the [Finishing] tab.

### Notes

- If [Print one side of the page] is selected while 2-Sided Printing is performed, the last page is printed on the front side of the cover sheet and back side of the cover will be blank.
- If [Print both sides of page] is selected but there is only one page printed on the back cover, the last page is printed on the front side of the cover sheet and back side of the cover will be blank.

#### 3) Insert Pages

This sets sheet insertion printing which allows you to insert a sheet between pages, or print a specific page on a sheet fed from a tray other than the Paper Source option selected on the [Basic] tab.

This option is useful when you want to insert a blank sheet between chapters, or when you want to print chapter cover pages on the different paper.

To enable sheet insertion printing, select the check box and click [Edit] to set how the pages are inserted in the [Insert Pages] dialog box.

P.46 "Insert Pages"

# Notes

- This option cannot be set when the [Interleave Pages] option is enabled.
- Up to 50 pages can be inserted.

### Tip

For detailed instructions on how to print with the [Insert Pages] setting, see the following page:

# 4) Interleave Pages

This sets the interleaving page feature that is useful when you want to insert paper of a different type (or from another source) between every page of your print job. For example, you can use this option to insert blank, colored sheets between overhead transparencies.

To enable interleaving pages, select the check box and select the location from where sheets are to be fed.

# Notes

- When this option is enabled as well as the [Use Front Cover] and [Use Back Cover] options enabled, no page is inserted after the front cover and back cover.
- This option cannot be set when [Insert Pages] option is enabled.

### Tip

For detailed instructions on how to print with the [Interleave Pages] setting, see the following page:

### Source

Select the location from where the interleaving sheet is to be fed. When [Auto] is selected, the paper is automatically selected according to the printed document size.

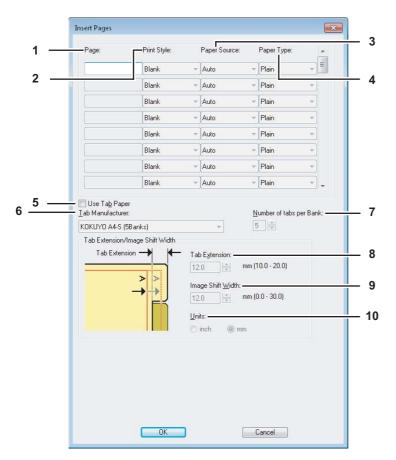
# Note

The selectable values in the [Source] box vary depending on the optional devices installed on this equipment and their configuration on the [Device Settings] tab.

# Duplicate

When you select this check box, you can print previous page images on the inserted sheet.

# **Insert Pages**



### 1) Page

Enter the page number where the sheet is to be inserted.

When [Blank] is selected from the [Print Style] box, the blank sheet is inserted before the entered pages. When [1 Side] is selected from the [Print Style] box, the entered page will be printed on the inserted sheet.

### 2) Print Style

This selects how you want to print on insertion sheets.

- Blank Select this to insert blank sheets.
- 1 Side Select this to print the specified page on the front side of the insertion sheets.
- 2 Sides Select this to print the specified page and the next page on both sides of the insertion sheets.

# 3) Paper Source

Select the location from where the insertion sheets are to be fed. When [Auto] is selected, the paper is automatically selected according to the printed document size.

# Note

The selectable values in the [Paper Source] box vary depending on the optional devices installed on this equipment and their configuration on the [Device Settings] tab.

# 4) Paper Type

Select the paper type to be inserted.

### 5) Use Tab Paper

Select this check box when you insert a sheet of tab paper between two specified pages or print the data of the specified page in the originals on the inserted tab paper.

### 6) Tab Manufacturer

Select the product name of the tab paper that you use. This equipment supports the following tab paper.

For Letter Tab:	Blanks USA copy Tabs (5 Banks) LT + 1/2" Tab Blanks USA copy Tabs (8 Banks) LT + 1/2" Tab
For A4 Tab:	KOKUYO A4-S (5 Banks) King JIM A4-S (5 Banks)

If you use tab paper other than those above, select [Custom]. When you select [Custom], you must specify the tab extension manually.

### 7) Number of tabs per Bank

Enter the number of tabs for each tab set. This must be set only when [Custom] is selected in the [Tab Manufacturer] option.

#### 8) Tab Extension

Enter the width of the tab extension. This must be set only when [Custom] is selected in the [Tab Manufacturer] option.

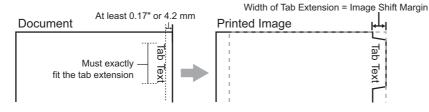
# 9) Image Shift Width

Enter the width to shift the printed image.

For example, if you want to print text on the tab extension of Letter Tab paper, create a Letter sized document and input the text on the right side. Specify the distance the printed image is shifted in printing on tab paper.

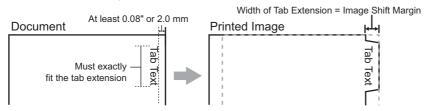
### Notes

- When creating a document for tab printing, you must place the text at the exact height to fit the tab extension.
- The selectable range of the edge margin differs depending on the model. See the following for setting this option:
  - For the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP
     The margin between the shifted text and right edge of the tab extension must have at least 0.17 inches (4.2 mm) of space because any data in this space are not printed. Enter the same value in the [Tab Extension] box and the [Image Shift Width] box.



- For the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP

The margin between the shifted text and right edge of the tab extension must have at least 0.08 inches (2.0 mm) of space because any data in this space are not printed. Enter the same value in the [Tab Extension] box and the [Image Shift Width] box.



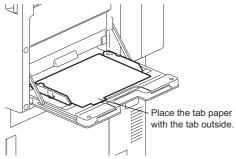
For models other than the above, refer to the corresponding *Printing Guide*.

### 10) Units

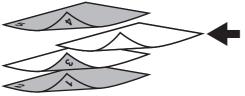
Select the unit for the Tab Extension and Image Shift option. The default unit varies depending on the regional setting of the client computer.

### Notes

• Tab paper must be fed from the bypass tray. Make sure to place it with its tab outside. The shape of the bypass tray differs depending on the model.



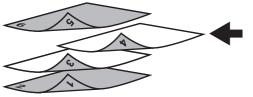
- The tab paper cannot be fed from the Large Capacity Feeder (optional) and drawers.
- If the document for tab printing is not created properly or the [Image Shift Width] is not set properly, the image will not be printed in the correct position within the tab extension. Please make sure to create the document and set the [Image Shift Width] correctly.
- If misprinting occurs while multiple tab pages are printed continuously, dirt may adhere to the reverse side of paper. To avoid this, it is recommended to print tab paper as a separated job for each page so that this equipment performs cleaning before printing the next tab paper.
- When printing tab paper, the tab paper may be caught in the exit in the inner tray because the roller to deliver the tab extension does not exit. In that case, remove the tab paper before printing the next job.
- If [Blank] is selected while 2-sided printing is performed, and you enter an even numbered page (printed on the back side of the paper: Page 4 in the following example figure) for the [Page] box, the specified page will be blank. The desired blank sheet is inserted next and the 2-sided printing continues from the next page.



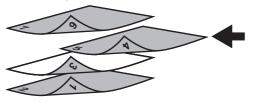
• If [1 Side] is selected while 2-sided printing is performed, the specified page (Page 3 in the following example figure) is printed on the front side of the sheet and back side of the sheet will be blank.



• If [1 Side] is selected while 2-sided printing is performed, and you enter an even numbered page (printed on the back side of the paper: Page 4 in the following example figure) for the [Page] box, the specified page will be blank. The page is printed on the front side of the inserted sheet and the 2-sided printing continues from the next page.



• If [2 Sides] is selected while 2-sided printing is performed, and you enter an even numbered page (printed on the back side of the paper: Page 4 in the following example figure) for the [Page] box, the specified page will be blank. The specified page and the next page are printed on the inserted sheet and the 2-sided printing continues from the next page.



# □ [Image Quality] tab

The [Image Quality] tab allows you to select how images are printed. You can easily select the appropriate image quality depending on the type of document.

# Note

The available setup items for this option differ depending on which MFP is used, color or black and white.

# For multifunctional digital color system (Color MFP)

🖶 🖬 Printer Printin	g Preferences	
Basic Finishing Paper Handling	mage Quality Effect Others Templates	
Print Job:	Image Quality <del>*</del>	
	Profile Name	
	General	
	Photograph E	
	Presentation	
	Line Art	
1.2.3	Setting 1	
Settings Profile:	Setting 2	
None  Save Profile Delete	Setting 3	2
Restore Defaults	Setting Delete	:
	OK Cancel Apply Help	

For multifunctional digital system (Black and White MFP)

PS3 Printing Preferences	
Basic Finishing Paper Handling Image Quality Effect Others Templates	
Print Job:         Image: Ima	4 5 6 7

# 1) Image Quality Type

This sets how colors are printed by selecting the job type. The printer driver automatically applies the proper image quality for the selected job type. You can select a pre-defined image quality type, or you can select a custom image quality type that you created. The custom image quality type can be created or modified by clicking [Setting].

- General Select this to apply the proper image quality for printing a general color document.
- Photograph Select this to apply the proper image quality for printing photos.
- Presentation Select this to apply the proper image quality for printing a vivid document.
- Line Art Select this to apply the proper image quality for printing a document contain a lot of characters or line art.
- Advanced Select this to apply a profile which can adjust color space. The [Advanced] option is available only for the PS/XPS Printer driver.

# Notes

- This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system.
- The Image Quality type option is not available when [Black and White] or [Twin Color] is selected at the [Color] box on the [Basic] tab.

# 2) [Setting]

Click this to customize an image quality setting. When this is clicked, the [Setting] dialog box appears. You can set up to 20 custom image quality settings.

- P.51 "Setting: [Basic] tab"
- P.54 "Setting: [Color Balance] tab"
- P.55 "Setting: [Image Attribute] tab"
- P.56 "Setting: [Advanced] tab"

# Notes

- This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system.
- In order to create a new custom image quality setting, you must access the printer driver properties from the [Devices and Printers] folder (Windows Vista / Windows Server 2008: [Printer], Windows XP / Windows Server 2003: [Printers and Faxes]), but not from the [Print] dialog box in the application.

### 3) [Delete]

Click this to delete the custom image quality setting. When you click this, the confirmation dialog box appears. Click [Yes] to delete the setting.

# Note

This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system.

### 4) Halftone

This sets how halftones are printed.

- Auto Select this to print using proper halftone depending on the contents in the document automatically.
- **Detail** Select this to print halftone in detail.
- Smooth Select this to print halftone smoothly.

# Notes

- This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital system.
- When the PCL Printer driver is used, [Auto] cannot be selected in the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP. The default is [Detail].

# 5) Smoothing

Select this check box to print texts and graphics smoothly.

# Note

This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital system.

### 6) Distinguish Thin Lines

Select this check box to print thin lines clearly.

### Note

This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital system.

# 7) Use Black for All Text

Select this check box to print all texts in 100% black except white texts.

# Note

This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital system.

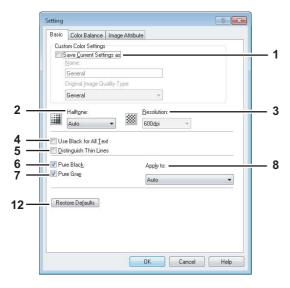
# Setting: [Basic] tab

In the [Basic] tab of the [Setting] dialog box, you can specify the following functions.

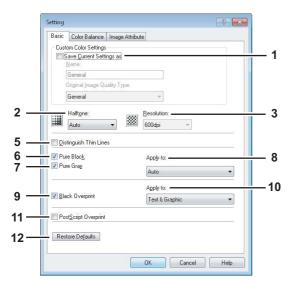
# Note

The print options in the [Basic] tab are available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system. The setup items differ depending on the model. For setup items other than below, refer to the corresponding *Printing Guide*.

# [Basic] tab for PCL/XPS Printer



# [Basic] tab for PS Printer



# 1) Save Current Settings as

Select this check box to save the settings as the different setting. When this box is cleared, the Image Quality Type that you selected will be undefined. Up to 20 custom image quality types can be created.

# Note

This check box is available only when you display printer driver properties from the [Devices and Printers] folder (Windows Vista / Windows Server 2008: [Printer], Windows XP / Windows Server 2003: [Printers and Faxes]).

### Name

Enter the Image Quality type name to be created. This must be entered when [Save Current Settings as] is selected.

### Tips

- When you edit an existing custom Image Quality Type, the settings of this Image Quality Type will be overwritten regardless of whether or not this Image Quality Type is renamed.
- Even if you enter any of the default Image Quality Type names ([General], [Photograph], [Presentation], [Line Art] or [Advanced]) registered as default settings, these default Image Quality types will not be overwritten. The Image Quality Type is saved as a new custom Image Quality Type under the name you have specified.

### Original Image Quality Type

Select the image quality type to be applied as the based image quality.

### 2) Halftone

This sets how halftones are printed.

- Auto Select this to print using proper halftone depending on the contents in the document automatically.
- Smooth Select this to print halftone smoothly.
- **Detail** Select this to print halftone in detail.

# 3) Resolution

- 600 dpi (Fixed)

### 4) Use Black for All Text

Select this check box to print all text in 100% black except white texts.



The [Use Black for All Text] option is available only for the PCL Printer/XPS printer driver.

### 5) Distinguish Thin Lines

Select this check box to print thin lines clearly.

# 6) Pure Black

Select this check box to print the black contents using black toner. When this box is selected, please select how this function applies in the [Apply to] box.

### 7) Pure Gray

Select this check box to print the gray scale contents using black toner. When this box is selected, please select how this function applies in the [Apply to] box.

# Note

The Pure Gray option is not available when [Pure Black] is not enabled.

# 8) Apply to

Select how the Pure Black and Pure Gray functions apply.

- <u>Auto</u> Select this to automatically select areas to be printed using black toner when you want to print the black (or black and gray scale) contents using its toner. When this option is selected, appropriate areas are printed using black toner according to the Image Quality Type option.
- Text Select this to print only black text or black-and-gray text using black toner.
- Text & Graphic Select this to print only black text and graphics, or black-and-gray text and graphics using black toner.
- Text, Graphic & Image Select this to print all black areas or all black-and-gray areas using black toner.

### 9) Black Overprint

Select this check box when printing background content that has black text overlaid on it. If this is enabled, the gap between the text and the background is minimized and color deviation is prevented. If this is not enabled, the background of the black content will not be printed.

# Note

The [Black Overprint] option is available only for the PS printer driver.

### 10) Apply to

Select how the Black Overprint functions apply.

- Text Select this to print all the full-color background and then print black text on the color background.
- <u>Text & Graphic</u> Select this to print all the full-color background and then print black text and graphics on the color background.

### Note

The [Apply to] option is available only for the PS printer driver.

### 11) PostScript Overprint

Select this to enable overprint an object that has been set so on an application.



This print option is selectable only when a PS printer driver is used.

### 12) [Restore Defaults]

Click this to restore all the image quality setting details displayed in the [Basic] tab menu to the original factory defaults.

# Setting: [Color Balance] tab

In the [Color Balance] tab of the [Setting] dialog box, you can specify the following functions. Adjust the density level by moving the scroll bar, or pressing buttons on the right and left of the scroll bar.

## Note

This option is available only when you have a multifunctional digital color system. The setup items differ depending on the model. For setup items other than those below, refer to the corresponding *Printing Guide*.

Basic	Color Balance	Image Attribu	ite	
	olors:	-4	Ģ	4
	01013.	•	1	+
Ea	ch Color			
	Cyan:	-4		4
	0	4	ń	۲
	Magenta:			
	0	-4		4
	U	4		1
	Yellow:	-4		4
	0	4		P.
	Black:	-4		4
	0	4		
	etail:		Edit	
	Restore Defa	ulte		
	Trostore pora	uns		

# 1) All Colors

Adjust the density of all the colors.

# 2) Each Color

Adjusts the density of each color for printing. You can set from -4 to 4.

# 3) Detail

Select this check box to adjust the density of each color separately in details. When this box is selected, click [Edit] to display the [Color Balance Detail] dialog box and specify the density of each color.

### - Color Balance Detail

- In the [Color Balance Detail] dialog box, you can specify the density of low, middle, and high colors for each color.
- Low Change this density to adjust the density of light color.
- Middle Change this density to adjust the density of half color.
- High Change this density to adjust the density of deep color.
- Restore Defaults Click this to restore all the image quality setting details displayed in the [Color Balance Detail] dialog box to the original factory defaults.

	Low:	Middle:	High:	
Cyan:	0			(-4 -
Magenta:	0		0	(-4 -
Yellow:	0 ≑	0 🌲	0	(-4 -
Black:	0	0	0 🍦	(-4 -
Diddic				
			,	
Restore Defaul	ts			

### 4) [Restore Defaults]

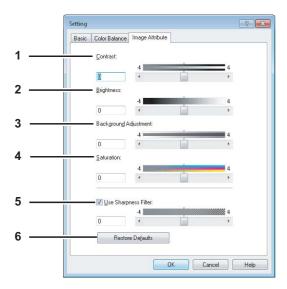
Click this to restore all the image quality setting details displayed in the [Color Balance] tab menu to the original factory defaults.

# Setting: [Image Attribute] tab

In the [Image Attribute] tab of the [Setting] dialog box, you can specify the following functions. Adjust the density level by moving the scroll bar, or pressing buttons on the right and left of the scroll bar.

### Note

This option is available only when you have a multifunctional digital color system. The setup items differ depending on the model. For setup items other than those below, refer to the corresponding *Printing Guide*.



# 1) Contrast

Adjust the contrast for printing. You can set from -4 (lowest) to 4 (highest).

#### 2) Brightness

Adjust the brightness for printing. You can set from -4 (darkest) to 4 (lightest).

#### 3) Background Adjustment

Adjust the background adjustment for printing. You can set from -4 (lightest) to 4 (darkest).

### 4) Saturation

Adjust the saturation for printing. You can set from -4 (low clear) to 4 (high clear).

# 5) Use Sharpness Filter

Select this check box when you use a sharpness filter. You can set from -4 (softest) to 4 (sharpest).

# 6) [Restore Defaults]

Click this to restore all the image quality setting details displayed in the [Image Attribute] tab menu to the original factory defaults.

# Setting: [Advanced] tab

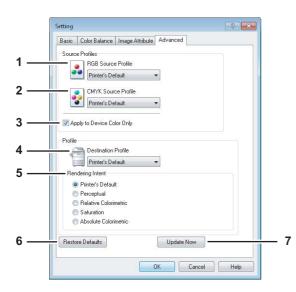
In the [Advanced] tab of the [Setting] dialog box, you can set the functions below. The color profile data of this equipment may be updated. If the SNMP communication between this equipment and your computer is available, open the [Advanced] tab menu and then click [Update Now] to obtain the updated color profile data.

# Notes

- This option is available only when you have a multifunctional digital color system. The setup items differ depending on the model. For setup items other than below, refer to the corresponding *Printing Guide*.
- The [Advanced] tab menu is displayed when [Advanced] is selected in [Image Quality]. The [Advanced] option is available only for the PS/XPS Printer driver.

### Tip

Color profiles can also be set from the TopAccess menu. For the detailed instructions on how to set color profiles from the TopAccess menu, refer to the **TopAccess Guide**.



### 1) RGB Source Profile

This selects the RGB source profile. When you obtained color profile data from this equipment, the RGB source profile data of this equipment appear.

### 2) CMYK Source Profile

This selects the CMYK source profile. When you obtained color profile data from this equipment, the CMYK source profile data of this equipment appear.

#### 3) Apply to Device Color Only

Select this check box when you give priority to color profiles embedded in the image.

### 4) Destination Profile

This selects the destination profile. When you obtained color profile data from this equipment, the destination profile data of this equipment appear.

### 5) Rendering Intent

This selects the method for color space conversion when you print images.

- Printer's Default Color space conversion is performed according to the default profile.
- Perceptual This is recommended for photo images.
- Relative Colorimetric More original colors can be retained than those when you select [Perceptual].
- **Saturation** This is recommended when the vividness of colors is more important than their correct reproduction. It is useful for graphic charts.
- Absolute Colorimetric Original colors can be retained even on colored paper.

### 6) [Restore Defaults]

Click this to restore all the image quality setting details displayed in the [Advanced] tab menu to the original factory defaults.

### 7) [Update Now]

Click this to obtain the latest color profile data set for this equipment and update the existing color profile data. This is enabled only when SNMP communication with this equipment is enabled.

# Note

[Printer's Default] is a default setting for RGB Source Profile, CMYK Source Profile, Destination Profile and Rendering Intent. When you select [Printer's Default], color space conversion is performed according to the default profile (that set as a default profile in the [ICC Profile] submenu of the [Setup] menu in the TopAccess administrator mode).

# □ [Effect] tab

The [Effect] tab contains print options that add effects to your print jobs such as Watermarks, Overlay Image printing, Rotate printing, Mirror printing, and Negative/Positive printing.

# [Effect] tab for PCL Printer

Printer Printing Preferences	
Basic Finishing Paper Handling Image Quality Effect Others Templates	
Print_job: Normal Print ▼ Watermark: None ▼ Add Edt Delete Print_on First Page Only	— 1
Overlag Image:       Wone       Details       Details       Details       Details       Details       Details	2
Botate 180 Degrees      Miror      Settings.      Profile:      None     Sage Profile     Dejete      Restore Defaults	3
OK Cancel Apply Help	

# [Effect] tab for XPS Printer

The American Street Str	inting Preferences	
Basic Finishing Paper Handling I Print Job:	mage Quality Effect Others Templates	
Normal Print	Watermark:	1
	None	
	Add Edit Delete	
	Print on First Page Only	_
	Overlag Image:	2
	None V	
	Details Delete	
	Print on Each Page	
h. h.	Rotate 180 Degrees	— 3
1.2.3	Mirror	<u> </u>
Settings		- 5
Profile:		
None		
Save Profile Delete		
Restore De <u>f</u> aults		
	OK Cancel Apply Help	

# [Effect] tab for PS

PS3 Printing Preferences	
Basic Finishing Paper Handling Image Quality Effect Others Templates	
Print Job: Watermarks:	1
Add Edt Delete	
Print on First Page Only	
Overlag Image:	2
DetailsDelete	
Prigt Over the Document:	
Rotate 180 Degrees	3
Settings_	5
- Profile:	
None  Save Profile Dejete	
Restore Defaults	
OK Cancel Apply	Help

# 1) Watermark

This selects the watermark to be used or edited. The following values except [None] are the default watermarks that have been registered in the printer driver. Up to 15 new watermarks can be added in this box.

- None — Select this if no watermark is desired.

The following default watermarks are also displayed in the box:

- TOP SECRET
- CONFIDENTIAL
- DRAFT
- ORIGINAL
- COPY

# Tip

For the detailed instructions on how to print with the [Watermark] setting, see the following page: P.103 "Printing with watermarks"

### [Add]

Click this to create a new watermark. The [Watermark] dialog box appears when you click on this. P.60 "Add/Edit Watermark"

# [Edit]

Select a watermark from the [Watermark] box and click it to edit the watermark. The [Watermark] dialog box appears when you click on this.

P.60 "Add/Edit Watermark"

# [Delete]

Select a watermark from the [Watermark] box and click it to delete a watermark. P.105 "Deleting a watermark"

### Notes

- The default watermarks can be deleted but, once deleted, they cannot be restored.
- [None] cannot be deleted.

# **Print on First Page Only**

Select this check box to print a watermark on the first page only. This setting will become available when any watermark is selected from the [Watermark] box.

### 2) Overlay Image

This selects an overlay image to be used. This feature allows you to print an image on the background of a print job, although the watermark allows only text.

# Notes

- When [Overlay Image] is selected together with the N-up printing, 1 overlay image will be printed on the entire
  page, regardless of the number of images set in 1 page.
- Both the overlay file and the documents on which you superimpose the overlay image must be created in the same size, color mode and orientation.

### Tips

• If you want to use an overlay image in your job, you must first create an overlay file. To do this, create an overlay image with most applications and print it as an overlay file. You can enable creating an overlay file on the [Print Job] box.

P.83 "Printing a document as an overlay file"

For the detailed instructions on how to print with the [Overlay Image] setting, see the following page:
 P.106 "Printing with an overlay file"

### [Details]

Click this to set which overlay image is applied to which page, such as changing the type of overlay image for odd pages and that for even pages or applying an overlay image only to the specified pages.

If you click this when [Multiple Overlays] is selected in the [Overlay Image] box, the [Multiple Overlays] dialog box appears.

P.61 "Multiple Overlays"

#### [Delete]

Click this to delete the overlay image that you select in the box. P.107 "Deleting an overlay image"

# Note

[None] and [Multiple Overlays] cannot be deleted.

#### **Print Over the Document**

Select this check box to print an overlay image over the document.

### **Print on Each Page**

This selects whether overlay images are printed for each page or paper when multiple pages are printed on one sheet with options such as Number of pages per sheet or Booklet. Select this check box when overlay images are printed for each page.

### 3) Rotate 180 Degrees

Select this check box to perform rotation printing of an image.

### 4) Mirror

Select this check box to perform mirror printing of an image.

# Note

This print option is not displayed for the PCL/PS printer driver.

# 5) Negative/Positive

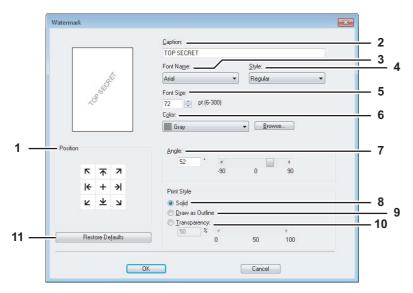
Select this check box to perform negative printing of an image.

### Notes

- This print option is disabled for the PCL printer driver.
- The Negative/Positive option is available only when [Black and White] is selected at the [Color] box on the [Basic] tab.

# Add/Edit Watermark

When you click [Add] or [Edit], the [Watermark] dialog box appears and you can create new watermark or edit selected watermarks.



### 1) Position

Select this to adjust the position of the watermark. Click the arrow button or [+] located at the center to adjust it.

### 2) Caption

Enter the text of a watermark. You can enter up to 63 alphanumeric characters. When you are editing a watermark, the selected watermark text is displayed in the box. The entered text is displayed as the sample image on the left.

### 3) Font Name

Select the font to be used for the watermark text.

### 4) Style

Select the font style for the watermark text.

- Regular Select this to set the regular style to the text.
- Bold Select this to set the bold style to the text.
- Italic Select this to set the italic style to the text.
- Bold Italic Select this to set the bold and italic style to the text.

# 5) Font Size

Enter the font size for the watermark text. The font size can be set from 6 to 300 pt in units of 1 pt.

### 6) Color

Select the color of the watermark text. If the color that you require is not listed in the box, click [Browse] to add new color.

# Notes

- This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system.
- When [Black and White] is selected at the [Color] box on the [Basic] tab, this option will be disabled.

### 7) Angle

Enter the degree of angle for rotating the watermark text. The angle can be set from -90 to 90 degrees in units of 1 degree. You can also set the degree of the angle by moving the scroll bar.

# 8) Solid

Select this to print a solid type of watermark.

#### 9) Draw as Outline

Select this to print a outline type of watermark.

### 10) Transparency

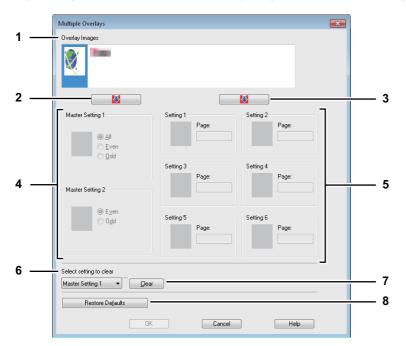
Select this to print a transparent watermark. When you select this, set the brightness from 0 (darker) to 100% (lighter) in units of 1%. You can also set the brightness using the scroll bar.

### 11) [Restore Defaults]

Click this to restore the settings displayed in the [Watermark] dialog box to the original factory defaults.

# **Multiple Overlays**

If you click [Details] when [Multiple Overlays] or the desired overlay is selected in the [Overlay Image] box, the [Multiple Overlays] dialog box appears. Set which overlay image is applied to which page in this dialog box.



#### 1) Overlay Images

The registered overlay images are displayed in a thumbnail. Select the desired overlay image.

### Tip

You can drag and drop an overlay image in the thumbnail to the desired overlay group (Master Setting 1/2 or Setting 1/2/3/4/5/6) to set directly. If another overlay image is already set in the selected group, the overlay image is overwritten.

### 2) [ $\downarrow$ ] (Master Setting)

This sets the overlay image selected in the [Overlay Images] box in the [Master Setting] field. Selection is switched in the order of [Master Setting 1] to [Master Setting 2] every time you click this.

# 3) [ $\downarrow$ ] (Setting)

This sets the overlay image selected in the [Overlay Images] box in the [Setting] field. Selection is switched in the order of [Setting 1], [Setting 2], [Setting 3], [Setting 4], [Setting 5] and [Setting 6] every time you click this.

# 4) Master Setting 1/2

- This sets if the selected overlay image is applied to all, even or odd pages.
- All Select this to apply the chosen overlay image to all pages.
- Even Select this to apply the chosen overlay image only to even pages.
- Odd Select this to apply the chosen overlay image only to odd pages.

# Notes

- If the specified pages are overlapped among multiple master settings, the setting of [Even] or [Odd] has priority
  over that of [All].
- If the specified pages are overlapped in both settings of [Master Setting] and [Setting], the setting of [Setting] has priority over that of [Master Setting].

### 5) Setting 1/2/3/4/5/6

This sets pages to which the selected overlay image is applied by page number. To specify more than one page, delimit with commas such as "1, 3, 5". To specify pages in a range, use a hyphen between the first and the last pages, such as "6-10".

- Page — Select this to apply the selected overlay image only to the specified pages.



If the specified pages are overlapped among multiple settings, the newer setting has priority.

# 6) Select setting to clear

This selects the overlay image setting to be cleared.

# 7) [Clear]

This clears the overlay image setting selected in the [Select setting to clear].

# 8) [Restore Defaults]

Click this to restore the settings displayed in the [Multiple Overlays] dialog box to the original factory defaults.

# □ [Others] tab

The [Others] tab contains print options such as toner saving, custom paper size and so on.

	Printer Printing Preferences		
	Basic Finishing Paper Handling Image Quality Effect Others Templates		
	Print Job: Default Menu Setting: Basic > TopAccess	— 1 2	
	Toner Save     Do not Print Blank Pages	$\frac{1}{4}^{3}_{5}$	
6 — 8 —	Image: Simple state         Image: Simple state           Image: Simple state         Output Devices           Add Printer         Image: Simple state	— 7 — 9	
	Custom Paper Size	10	
11 —	User name (Alas): User001 User001 Department Code:		
13—	Settings   Profile:	—12	
	None  Server Name: Save Profile Delete	—14	
15—	Custom Settings File: Import Export	—16	
17—	Restore All Defaults     Version Information	—18	
	OK Cancel Apply Help		

### 1) Default Menu Setting

Select the default tab that is displayed when you open the printing preferences of the printer driver. Set frequently used functions as a default menu setting for your convenience.

### Note

If you made settings on the [Others] tab menu from the print setting page of the application, they are restored to the defaults when you close the printer driver.

If you want to resume the settings, set the printer driver from the [Devices and Printers] folder.  $\square$  P.19 "Setting initial values of print options"

### 2) TopAccess (Link)

Click this to start a web browser and display the TopAccess menu.

# 3) Toner Save

Select this check box to print in the toner save mode.

Note

When the toner save mode is enabled, printing may become lighter.

# 4) Do not Print Blank Pages

Select this check box to ignore blank pages for printing. If the Watermark feature is enabled, all pages will be printed even when the content is blank.



The pages having a header or footer will be printed even if the content is blank.

# 5) Letterhead Print Mode

Select this check box to perform duplex printing on paper whose sides need to be distinguished, such as paper with illustrations on one side.

### 6) SNMP Communication

This enables SNMP communication between this equipment and your computer to retrieve the option configuration information.

Note

If you disable SNMP Communication, Local Discovery notification also will be disabled.

# 7) [SNMP Settings]

Click this button when you need to verify or change the SNMP settings. P.66 "SNMP Settings"

Note

In order to set [SNMP Settings], you must access the printer driver properties from the [Devices and Printers] folder (Windows Vista / Windows Server 2008: [Printer], Windows XP / Windows Server 2003: [Printers and Faxes]), but not from the [Print] dialog box in the application.

### 8) [Output Devices]

This switches the equipment to be used for printing or splits one print job between two pieces of equipment (Tandem Printing).

P.113 "Switching equipment to print jobs"

P.115 "Splitting a print job across two pieces of equipment (Tandem Printing)"

### 9) [Add Printer]

This discovers the OKI MFP series equipment over a network and adds it on [Printer Folder].

P.67 "Add Printer"

# 10) [Custom Paper Size]

Click this to specify the custom paper size. The [Custom Paper Size] dialog box appears when you click this. P.68 "Custom Paper Size"

# Notes

- In order to set [Custom Paper Size], you must access the printer driver properties from the [Devices and Printers] folder (Windows Vista / Windows Server 2008: [Printer], Windows XP / Windows Server 2003: [Printers and Faxes]), but not from the [Print] dialog box in the application.
- The [Custom Paper Size] can be set only by an operation with the administrator privilege.

# 11) User name (Alias)

Enter a nickname as required, which is displayed on the Private Print job list and Hold Print job list. You can specify the desired name so that you can easily find the target job from the job list when releasing it from the equipment's touch panel.

Tips

- Up to 31 characters can be entered for the [User name (Alias)] box.
- The user name that is entered to log in to your computer is initially used for [User name (Alias)]. If the user name is not changed, the log-in user name is displayed on the Private Print job list and Hold Print job list.
- The nickname entered for the [User name (Alias)] box is applied only to the Private Print job list and Hold Print job list. On other job list screens (Scheduled Print jobs / Invalid jobs) and the Print Log screen, the log-in user name is always displayed.

### 12) Department Code

Enter the user's department code if the system is managed with department codes. Please ask your administrator for your department code.

### Notes

- When the User Management setting is enabled, it is used to manage a print job instead of the Department Code Management setting. In this case, a user name that has been entered to log in to your computer is used for the authentication of the print job. Therefore, you do not need to set your department code to the printer driver but you must register your user name in advance. If your user name is not registered, the print job is processed as an invalid one according to the User Authentication Enforcement setting. Also if a print job is sent in RAW format, it is processed according to the RAW Print Job setting. For more information about the User Authentication Enforcement setting or the RAW Print Job setting, refer to the TopAccess Guide.
- If the No Limit Black function is enabled, you do not have to specify the department code when you print a document with selecting [Black and White] in the [Color] option in the [Basic] tab of the printer driver.
- If the number of the printed sheets for a print job exceeds the output limitation for the entered department code, the print job is stored in the invalid department code print job list without printing. When you want to print the print job, perform printing from [JOB STATUS] on the touch panel by entering another department code for which the output limitation is more than the number of printed sheets.
- In the [Department Code] box, you can enter a department code within 63 characters.

### Tip

How the equipment performs printing for an invalid department code print job, for which an invalid department code is specified, varies depending on the Invalid Department Code Print Job setting that can be set in the TopAccess Administrator mode and whether SNMP communication is enabled or not.

- When SNMP communication is enabled and Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Store to invalid job list], an error message will be displayed when an invalid department code is entered.
- When SNMP communication is disabled and Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Store to invalid job list], the invalid department code print job will be stored in the invalid department code print job list without printing.
- When the Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Print], the invalid department code print job will be printed.
- When the Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Delete], the invalid department code print job will be deleted.

#### 13) Hide Department Code

Select this check box to display a department code in the blank symbols.

#### 14) Server Name

Enter the desired LDAP server if needed.

Tip

Up to 64 characters (excluding #;  $\uparrow$  =) can be entered for the [Server Name] box.

# 15) [Import]

Click this to import custom settings (e.g. template, watermark, overlay, image quality type, custom paper size, profiles) to the printer driver.

#### How to import custom settings

- Click [Import]. A dialog box to select a file appears. Select a file (\*cfu for PCL Printer, \*cfp for PS, \*cfv for XPS) to be imported.
- Click [Open]. A dialog box to confirm if you overwrite the file appears. Then click [OK].

### Note

In order to set and perform [Import], you must access the printer driver properties from the [Devices and Printers] folder (Windows Vista / Windows Server 2008: [Printer], Windows XP / Windows Server 2003: [Printers and Faxes]), but not from the [Print] dialog box in the application.

### 16) [Export]

Click this to export custom settings (e.g. template, watermark, overlay, image quality type, custom paper size, profiles) from the printer driver.

### How to export custom settings

- Click [Export].
- The [Save as] dialog box appears. Specify a file name and a directory. Then click [Save].

Note

In order to set and perform [Export], you must access the printer driver properties from the [Devices and Printers] folder (Windows Vista / Windows Server 2008: [Printer], Windows XP / Windows Server 2003: [Printers and Faxes]), but not from the [Print] dialog box in the application.

### 17) [Restore All Defaults]

Click this to return settings in all the tab menus other than the [Device Settings] tab menus to the default ones. A confirmation dialog box appears as you click this, and if you click [OK], print settings in all the tab menus will return to the default ones.

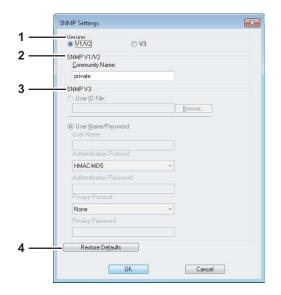
# Note

If you want to change the settings in the [Font] and [Device Settings] tab menus, you need to access with the administrator privilege from the Printers folder. For the details, see the following page: P.69 "[Device Settings] tab"

### 18) [Version Information]

Click this to display the [Version Information] dialog box.

# **SNMP Settings**



1) Version

Be sure to have the correct SNMP version set for your OKI MFP and select from the following options:

- V1/V2 Select this option to enable SNMP V1 and V2.
- V3 Select this option to enable SNMP V3.
- V1/V2/V3 (for [Discovery Settings] dialog box only) Select this option to enable SNMP V1, V2, and V3.

### 2) SNMP V1/V2

**Community Name**—If a community name other than "private" (default) is set for the SNMP community name for your OKI MFP, enter its community name.

# Notes

- To find your OKI MFP under the SNMP V1/V2 environment, the community names set for the target OKI MFP must be specified correctly. For help, consult your administrator.
- To change the community name, the administrator privilege is necessary. You must log in with the "Administrator" privilege and open the printer driver properties.
- Up to 31 characters including the following symbols can be entered for the Community Name.
   ! " # \$ % & ' () \* + , / : ; < = > ? @ [\]^\_` { | }~

# 3) SNMP V3

If SNMP V3 is enabled, select one of the following items to set how users are authenticated.

**User ID File** — Select this option when you want to use a user ID file. Click [Browse] and specify the user ID file. **User Name/Password** — Select this option when you want to use the user name and password. When this option is selected, use the keyboard to select the following items:

- User Name
- Authentication Protocol
- Authentication Password
- Privacy Protocol
- Privacy Password

# Notes

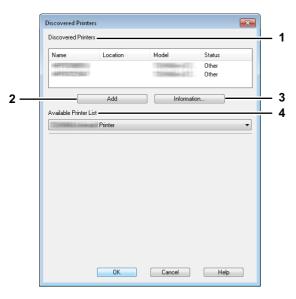
- If you select to enable SNMP V3, consult your network administrator for preliminary advice on how to authenticate users.
- Up to 31 characters including the following symbols can be entered for each of the User Name, Authentication Password and Privacy Password.

```
! $ % & ' ( ) - , < > @ [ ] ^ _ ` { } ~
```

### 4) [Restore Defaults]

Click this button when you want to reset all the settings back to the defaults.

# **Add Printer**



### 1) Discovered Printers

This displays the OKI MFP series discovered over a network. You can check its name, installation site, model name and status.

### Note

The OKI MFP series to be discovered differ depending on the settings on the [Device Settings] tab or the type of your printer driver.

- If any of the models below is selected in the [Model Selection] box on the [Device Settings] tab, only they can be discovered and other OKI MFP series models are not.
  - ES9160 MFP
  - ES9170 MFP
  - ES9460 MFP
  - ES9470 MFP
  - CX3535 MFP
  - CX4545 MFP
- If [PCL] is selected in the [Model Selection] box on the [Device Settings] tab, any OKI MFP series model to which your printer driver can be applied is discovered.

### 2) [Add]

This adds the printers selected in the [Discovered Printers] box to [Printer Folder].

### 3) [Information]

This indicates the basic information of the printer selected in the [Discovered Printers] box. You can check the availability of color printing, 2-sided printing or stapling, its copying speed, resolution and the type of paper placed.

# 4) Available Printer List

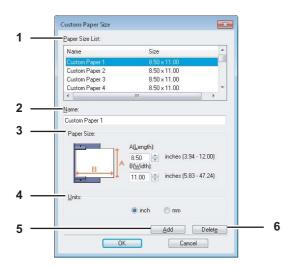
This indicates the OKI MFP series printers registered in [Printer Folder].

# **Custom Paper Size**

In the [Custom Paper Size] dialog box, up to 20 custom paper sizes can be defined. The custom page size that you specify can be selected in the [Original Paper Size] and [Print Paper Size] box on the [Basic] tab.



The defined custom paper size setting can be used in common for the PCL/PS/XPS printer drivers.



### 1) Paper Size List

Select the custom paper size that you want to modify.

### 2) Name

Enter the custom paper size name. You can enter up to 63 characters. This name will be displayed in the [Original Paper Size] and [Print Paper Size] box on the [Basic] tab.

3) Paper Size

Enter A (Length) and B (Width) to specify the paper size.

# Note

The selectable range of A (length) and B (width) differs depending on the model. Select values within the range shown on the right of each.

### 4) Units

Select the unit for the paper size. The default unit varies depending on the regional setting in the Windows.

### 5) [Add]

Click this to save the settings over the selected custom paper size that you selected in the [Paper Size List].

# Note

If you click [Add], a dialog box prompting you to confirm that the custom paper size differs depending on the model. Select the custom paper size that your equipment supports.

### 6) [Delete]

Click this to clear and restore the default settings of the selected custom paper size that you selected in the [Paper Size List]. When you click this, the confirmation dialog box appears. Click [Yes] to delete the setting.

# Notes

- To register a custom paper size, either A (Length) or B (Width) should differ by more than 0.3 inches (7 mm) from the standard paper size. If not, the created custom paper size is considered as the standard paper size.
- You cannot create a custom paper size with A (Length) longer than B (Width). If you want to print such a document, do so by selecting [landscape] for the [Orientation].
- There are some precautions when you use paper larger than the standard sizes. For details, see the following page:

P.111 "Printing on paper larger than standard sizes"

# □ [Device Settings] tab

The [Device Settings] tab allows you to configure options. When any optional unit is installed in this equipment, set the configuration of the machine on this tab. The [Device Settings] tab can be displayed only from the Printers folder (and not when displaying the properties from the application's print dialog box).

#### Note

In order to set the [Device Settings] tab, you must access the printer driver properties from the [Devices and Printers] folder (Windows Vista / Windows Server 2008: [Printer], Windows XP / Windows Server 2003: [Printers and Faxes]). For detailed instructions on how to set the [Device Settings] tab, see the following page:

[	😓 Printer Properties		
	General Sharing Ports Advanced Color Ma	anagement Security Device Settings	
		Model Selection:	1
		-44/2010/00044420	-
		Option	•
		Drawers:	2
		Drawer 1,2 & Drawer 3,4  Finisher:	<u> </u>
		None	J
		Hole Punch Unit:	<u> </u>
		None	
		External LCF:	— 5
		None	•
		Inserter Unit	<u> </u>
		Drawer Settings Account Settings	<u> </u>
	Device Settings Retrieval		
	Update Automatically	Customization	<u> </u>
11 —	Update Now		
		Version Information	<u> </u>
12 —	Restore Defaults		
12			
		OK Cancel Apply Help	
l			

### 1) Model Selection

This sets the model type.

# Note

If you select [PCL], you can narrow down the setup items of the printer driver to those used commonly in all of the entire OKI MFP series. It is convenient in such cases as when you are using a printer driver already installed to other OKI MFP models.

# 2) Option

This option sets whether the following optional devices are installed.

#### Drawers

This sets the installation of drawers according to the configuration.

- Drawer1 Select this when only Drawer 1 is installed.
- Drawer 1 & LCF Select this when Drawer 1 and the LCF (optional) are installed.
- Drawer 1 & Drawer 3 Select this when Drawers 1 and 3 are installed.
- Drawer 1 & Drawer 3, 4 Select this when Drawers 1, 3 and 4 are installed.
- Drawer 1 & Drawer 2 Select this when Drawers 1 and 2 are installed.
- Drawer 1, 2 & Drawer 3 Select this when Drawers 1, 2 and 3 are installed.

- Drawer 1, 2 & Drawer 3, 4 Select this when Drawers 1, 2, 3 and 4 are installed.
- Drawer 1, 2 & LCF Select this when Drawers 1, 2 and the LCF are installed.

### Note

The Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is not available for some countries or regions.

- 3. Finisher
  - This sets whether or not the Finisher (optional) is installed.
  - None Select this when a Finisher (optional) is not installed.
  - Hanging Finisher Select this when a Hanging Finisher (optional) is installed.
  - **Finisher** Select this when a Finisher (optional) is installed.
  - Saddle Stitch Finisher Select this when a Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed.
  - Job Separator Select this when a Job Separator (optional) is installed.
  - Offset Tray Select this when a Offset Tray (optional) is installed.

# 4) Hole Punch Unit

This sets whether or not the Hole Punch Unit (optional) is installed.

- None Select this when a Hole Punch Unit (optional) is not installed.
- 2 Holes Select this when a 2 Hole Punch Unit (optional) is installed.
- 2/3 Holes Select this when a 2/3 Hole Punch Unit (optional) is installed.
- 4 Holes (F) Select this when a 4 hole (F) punch unit (optional) is installed.
- 4 Holes (S) Select this when a 4 hole (S) punch unit (optional) is installed.

#### 5) External LCF

- This sets whether or not the External Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is installed.
- None Select this when an External Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is not installed.
- External LCF Select this when an External Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is installed.

#### 6) Inserter Unit

Select this check box when the Inserter (optional) is installed.



This setting is selectable only when [PCL] is selected in the [Model Selection] box.

### 7) [Drawer Settings]

Click this to set the paper size and paper type of each drawer. The [Drawer Settings] dialog box appears by clicking this.

P.71 "Drawer Settings"

### 8) [Account Settings]

Click this button to set whether the user management setting is enabled or not. You can also set whether the Private Print Restriction function and Hold Print Restriction function are enabled or not. The [Account Settings] dialog box appears upon clicking this button.

P.72 "Account Settings"

### 9) [Customization]

This sets options specific to PCL, or changes the Plug-in settings or the printer driver language. When you click this, the [Customization] dialog box appears.

P.73 "Customization: [Plug-in] tab"

P.74 "Customization: [Language] tab"

P.75 "Customization: [PDL Settings] tab"



The Printer Language setting is available only when a PCL printer driver is used.

### 10) [Version Information]

Click this to display the [Version Information] dialog box.

#### 11) Device Settings Retrieval

This enables SNMP communication between this equipment and your computer to retrieve the option configuration information.

### **Update Automatically**

Select this check box to update the option configuration information automatically every time you open the [Device Settings] tab.

### [Update Now]

Click this to obtain the configuration information from this equipment immediately.

#### Tip

If the connection to the equipment has not been configured correctly, the message "The address of your printer could not be located. Would you like to find it?" will be displayed when you click [Update Now]. If it is displayed, click [Yes] and search for the equipment using the [Local Discovery] dialog box. After searching for the equipment, SNMP communication will be enabled. For the instructions on how to search for the equipment, refer to the instructions of Local Discovery.

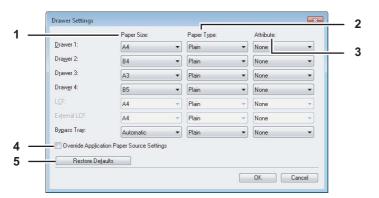


If you disable SNMP Communication, Local Discovery notification also will be disabled.

#### 12) [Restore Defaults]

Click this to restore the configuration of this equipment displayed in the [Device Settings] tab menu to the original factory defaults.

#### **Drawer Settings**



#### 1) Paper Size

Select the paper size set in each drawer.

#### 2) Paper Type

Select the paper type set in each drawer.

#### 3) Attribute

Select the attribute of the paper. When you set the attribute, the drawer will be selected preferentially according to the print settings.

#### 4) Override Application Paper Source Settings

Select this check box to use the paper source setting in the printer driver rather than the application setting.

#### 5) [Restore Defaults]

Click this to restore the settings displayed in the [Drawer Settings] dialog box to the original factory defaults.

Tip

Drawers selectable differ depending on the model and the option configuration.

## **Account Settings**

	Account Settings	×
— 2 —	Use User Authentication User Name:	
	User001	
3 —	Domain Name:	
۱ —	Private Print Restriction	
5 —	Hold Print Restriction	
	OK Cancel	

Tip

When SNMP communication is enabled, the following account information is automatically obtained from the equipment.

#### 1) Use User Authentication

Select this check box to enable the user management function.

#### 2) User Name

The user name that is entered to log in to your computer is displayed.

#### 3) Domain Name

The domain name on which the equipment belongs is displayed.

#### 4) Private Print Restriction

Select this check box to enable the Private Print Restriction function.

#### 5) Hold Print Restriction

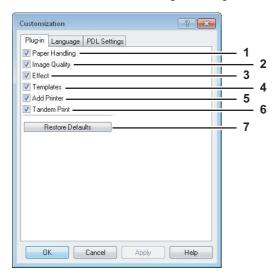
Select this check box to enable the Hold Print Restriction function.

Tips

- For details and setting of the Private Print Restriction function and Hold Print Restriction function, refer to the *TopAccess Guide*.
- After you adjust settings in the [Account Settings] dialog box, make sure to confirm that the settings have been changed as specified in the printing preferences dialog box, accessing from the [File] menu > [Printing Preferences]. You can also confirm that the settings have been changed as specified on the properties page of the printer driver when you print documents from applications.

#### Customization: [Plug-in] tab

You can enable or disable the Plug-in setting.



#### 1) Paper Handling

Select this check box to enable the [Paper Handling] tab.

#### 2) Image Quality

Select this check box to enable the [Image Quality] tab.

#### 3) Effect

Select this check box to enable the [Effect] tab.

#### 4) Templates

Select this check box to enable the [Templates] tab.

#### 5) Add Printer

Select this check box to enable [Add Printer] on the [Others] tab. P.63 "[Others] tab" P.67 "Add Printer"

#### 6) Tandem Print

Select this check box to enable [Output Devices] on the [Others] tab.

- P.63 "[Others] tab"
- P.113 "Switching equipment to print jobs"
- P.115 "Splitting a print job across two pieces of equipment (Tandem Printing)"

#### 7) [Restore Defaults]

Click this to restore the factory defaults on the [Plug-in] tab.

## Customization: [Language] tab

You can switch printer driver language.

Restore Defaults	ustomi	zation		? 🗙
Restore Defaults	Plug-in	Language	PDL Settings	
	Auto	ð.	•]	
	F	estore Defa	ults	
		1000010-0-010		
OK Cancel Apply Help	<u> </u>		Cancel Apply	Help

#### 1) Language

This selects the language to be used.

- <u>Auto</u> / Chinese (Simplified) / Chinese (Traditional) / Danish / Dutch / English (UK) / English (US) / Finnish / French / German / Italian / Japanese / Norwegian, Bokmål / Polish / Russian / Spanish / Swedish

#### Tip

[Auto] is selected by default. When [Auto] is selected, the most appropriate printer driver language is automatically set according to the regional and language settings in Windows OS.

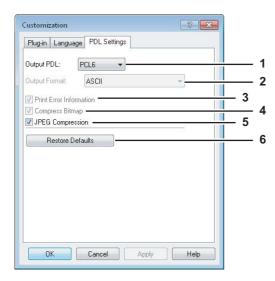
#### 2) [Restore Defaults]

Click this to restore the factory defaults on the [Language] tab.

#### Customization: [PDL Settings] tab

#### Note

The Printer Driver setting is available only for a PCL printer driver.



#### 1) Output PDL

This setting is available only for PCL6.

- 2) Output Format This setting is not available for this model.
- 3) Print Error Information This setting is not available for this model.
- 4) Compress Bitmap This sends the compressed bitmaps to this equipment.
- 5) JPEG Compression This sends compressed JPEG data to this equipment.
- 6) [Restore Defaults]

Click this to restore the factory defaults on the [PDL Settings] tab.

## [Templates] tab

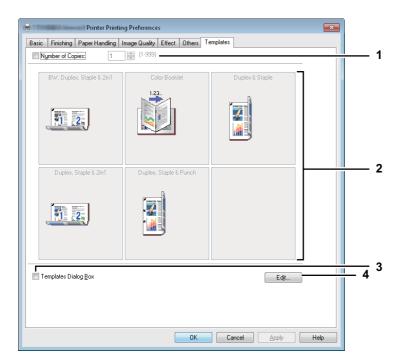
You can register print options that you frequently use as a profile. On the [Templates] tab you can save this profile in a Template Button. Also you can display a dialog box for selecting Template Buttons automatically upon printing, enabling easy printing with profiles.

P.23 "Setting up print options with Template Buttons"

Tip

To use a Template Button, you must first save a profile in this button. For instructions on how to save profiles, see the following page:

P.20 "Setting print options using profiles"



#### 1) Number of Copies

This sets the number of copies.

#### Note

The selectable range of the number of copies: 1 copy to 999 copies

## 2) Template Button

Click this to apply the profile saved in a Template Button to each setting of the printer driver.

On the Template Button, the name of the profile saved and the print image of the job appear. 5 factory default profiles below are saved in a Template Button. You can save up to 6 profiles, including 5 default ones.

- BW, Duplex, Staple & 2in1
- Color Booklet
- Duplex & Staple
- Duplex, Staple & 2in1
- Duplex, Staple & Punch

#### 3) Templates Dialog Box

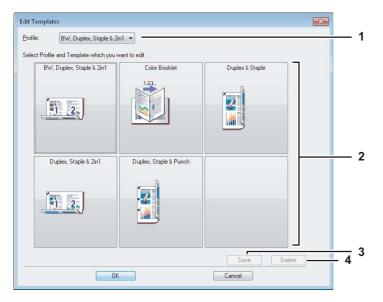
Select this check box to display the [Templates] dialog box automatically upon printing. You can select any of the Template Buttons displayed on the [Templates] dialog box. This saves you the effort of opening the printer driver menu and setting up profiles each time you print, in such cases as when you use profiles frequently.

#### 4) [Edit]

This edits the Template Buttons. Click this to display the [Edit Templates] dialog box.

#### **Edit Templates**

You can edit the settings of the Template Buttons.



#### 1) Profile

This selects the profile to be saved in a Template Button.

#### 2) Template Button

This selects the Template Button to be edited.

## 3) [Save]

This saves the chosen profile in the selected Template Button.

#### 4) [Delete]

This deletes the settings of the selected Template Button.

#### Note

The print options registered in each profile are not deleted even if you click [Delete].

## **Printing With Best Functions for Your Needs**

In this section, procedures are given to print various types of print jobs, using the layout and finishing options. Read this section before starting printing and select the procedure best suited for your needs.

P.78 "Printing various print job types"

Being P.90 "Layout and finishing options in [Basic] tab menu"

P.92 "Layout and finishing options in [Finishing] tab menu"

P.100 "Finishing options in [Paper Handling] tab menu"

P.103 "Finishing options in [Effect] tab menu"

P.108 "Using various types of paper"

P.113 "Switching equipment to print jobs"

P.115 "Splitting a print job across two pieces of equipment (Tandem Printing)"

## Printing various print job types

The printer drivers provide various ways to handle such jobs as Scheduled Print, Private Print, Hold Print, Proof Print, Overlay Image file, Store to e-Filing, and Multiple Job Type.

P.79 "Printing scheduled print jobs"

P.80 "Printing private print jobs"

P.81 "Printing hold print jobs"

P.82 "Printing proof print jobs"

P.83 "Creating an overlay file"

P.84 "Storing to e-Filing"

P.87 "Multiple Job Type"

## Printing scheduled print jobs

The Print Scheduling feature allows you to specify the date and time to print your job. This is especially useful for delaying your print job until the off-peak hours.

#### Note

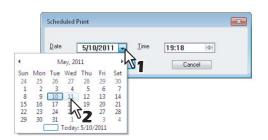
Time of the System and MFP should be the same.

#### Printing on a specified date and time

- **1** Display the [Basic] tab menu.
- **2** Select [Scheduled Print] in the [Print Job] box.

Normal Print 💦 🛄	Letter (8 1/2 x 11'')
Normal Print	🐥 Print Paper Size:
Scheduled Print	📕 Same as Original Size 👻
Private Print     Proof Print	Paper Source:
Hold Print	Auto
📲 Print to Overlay File	Paper Type:
刘 Store to e-Filing	Plain
+ Multiple Job Type	Destination:

- **3** Click [...] on the right of the [Print Job] box.
  - The [Scheduled Print] dialog box appears.
- 4 Click the arrow button at the [Date] box to display the Calendar window, and select the desired date for your print job.



5

Select the [Time] box and click the spin button to change the time.



- To change the hour, select the hour number and click the spin button.
- To change the time, select the time number and click the spin button.
- 6 Click [OK].
- 7 Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## **8** Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The document will be queued to be printed at the specified time and date.

## Printing private print jobs

When you want to print private documents, use this feature.

#### Printing confidential documents

- 1 Display the [Basic] tab menu.
- 9 Select [Private Print] in the [Print Job] box.

	Original Paper Size:
Normal Print	] Letter (8 1/2 x 11")
Normal Print	🎽 🕴 Print Paper Size:
Scheduled Print	Same as Original Size 👻
💣 Private Print 📐	
Proof Print	Paper Source:
Hold Print	Auto
+ Print to Overlay File	Paper Type:
🝏 Store to e-Filing	Plain
+ Multiple Job Type	Destination:

3 Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

#### Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

- The print job is stored in the Private Print job list in the touch panel display.
- Enter a password in the [Password] box and click [OK].

Private Print	
Please enter the password for private print. Accept	stable number of characters are between 1 and 63.
Password	
121	
	Cancel

The print job is stored in the Private Print job list in the touch panel display.

#### Notes

- Enter a password using the alphanumeric characters and symbol characters (ASCII code characters between 0x21 to 0x7E) in the [Password] box. The password must be between 1 and 63 characters.
- When you enter this password on the touch panel display, confidential documents will be printed. If you
  forget it, you will not be able to print them.

## Press the [PRINT] button on the control panel.

The print job list is displayed.

Select [PRIVATE] on the touch panel.

Tip

If the Private print job list is not displayed, select [PRIVATE] from the box of the job types.

#### **8** Select the desired user name and press [OK].

#### Tip

When you enter the nickname for the [User name (Alias)] box on the [Others] tab, and send the job to the equipment, its nickname will be displayed on the Private Print job list. If not, the user name that is entered to log in to your computer will be displayed on the Private Print job list.

- **9** Enter the password for the Private Print job, which has previously been set via the computer, and then press [OK].
  - When the user name that is entered to log in to your computer is used for [User name (Alias)]:
    - The displayed list contains the Private Print jobs for which the same password has been set. When the nickname is entered for [User name (Alias)]:
  - The displayed list contains the Private Print jobs for which the same nickname and the same password have been set.
- **10** Select the desired job (desired document name) on the private print job list and press [PRINT].

For the detailed instructions on how to use the control panel, see the following page:  $\square$  P.194 "Private Print jobs"

## Printing hold print jobs

When you want to print Hold Print documents, use this feature.

## Printing hold print documents

Display the [Basic] tab menu.

## 2 Select [Hold Print] in the [Print Job] box.

Normal Print	Letter (8 1/2 x 11")	-
Normal Print	Print Paper Size:	
Scheduled Print	Same as Original Size	•
C Private Print	Paper Source:	
EX Hold Print	🚍 Auto	
+ M Print to Dv	Paper Type:	
💓 Store to e-Filing 🕰 🔡	Plain	,
🕂 Multiple Job Type	Destination:	
100 %	Exit Tray	

**3** Set any other print options as required and click [OK].

#### Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The print job is stored in the Hold Print job list in the touch panel display.

- **5** Press the [PRINT] button on the control panel.
- Select [HOLD] on the touch panel.
- 7 Select the desired user name.

#### Tip

When you enter the nickname for the [User name (Alias)] box on the [Others] tab, and send the job to the equipment, its nickname will be displayed on the Hold Print job list. If not, the user name that is entered to log in to your computer will be displayed on the Hold Print job list.

8

#### Select the desired job on the Hold Print job list and press [PRINT].

For detailed instructions on how to use the control panel, see the following page:  $\square$  P.198 "Hold Print jobs"

Tips

- When the user name that is entered to log in to your computer is used for [User name (Alias)]: The displayed list contains the Hold Print jobs which have been registered by the selected user.
- When the nickname is entered for [User name (Alias)]: The displayed list contains all the Hold Print jobs which have been registered by users having the same nickname.

## Printing proof print jobs

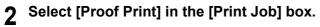
You can print out one proof copy as a trial first. This helps to prevent wasting paper. After you proof it, you are prompted to specify whether you want to continue the print job or delete it.

#### Note

When you want to print multiple copies, each of which is to be sent as an individual print job by your application, all the copies, not just one copy, will be printed even if you set Proof Print. In such a case, print just one trial copy first, and then specify the required number of copies on the touch panel display.

#### Printing a proof copy

1 Display the [Basic] tab menu.



Print Job:	Original Paper Size:
Normal Print 💦 📃	Letter (8 1/2 x 11")
Normal Print	🐥 🛛 Print Paper Size:
(V) Scheduled Print	📇 Same as Original Size 👻
🛷 Private Print	
Proof Print	Paper Source:
Hold Print	Auto
* Print to Overlay F	Paper Type:
◆③ Store to e-Filing	Plain
📑 Multiple Job Type	Destination:
100 %	Exit Tray

3 Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## ▲ Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

One copy of the document is printed and remaining sets of job is stored in the Proof Job list in the touch panel display.

- **5** Press the [PRINT] button on the control panel.
- 6 Select [PROOF] on the touch panel.

#### Select the desired job on the proof print job list and press [PRINT].

For detailed instructions on how to use the control panel, see the following page:  $\square$  P.191 "Proof Print jobs"

## Creating an overlay file

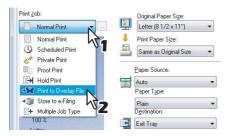
You can save up to 20 documents as overlay files using printer driver. You can print an overlay on the foreground or background of a document. To do that, you must first create an overlay file.

Notes

- If you save a multi-page document as an overlay file, only the first page of the document will be saved as an overlay file.
- Both the overlay file and the documents on which you superimpose the overlay image must be created in the same size, color mode, and orientation.

#### Printing a document as an overlay file

- **1** Display the [Basic] tab menu.
- 2 Select [Print to Overlay File] in the [Print Job] box.



Click [...] on the right of the [Print Job] box.

The [Overlay Image Name] dialog box appears.

▲ Enter an overlay image name and then click [OK].

<u>O</u> verlay Image Na	me:	Overlay01	
		O YONGYOT	
		ht.	
_			
i in	OK .	Cance	

You can enter up to 63 characters.



#### Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The document is saved as an overlay file.



6

You can use a created overlay file when you want to print a document. P.106 "Printing with an overlay file"

## □ Storing to e-Filing

The Store to e-Filing feature allows you to send print jobs to e-Filing on this equipment. The job stored to e-Filing can then be printed from the touch panel display at a later time. It can be also composed with other documents using the e-Filing web utility.

You can select either a [public] or [user] box to store print jobs. You can also specify a folder in which the print job is to be stored in these boxes. The public box is shared by all users who can see the jobs stored in this box. User boxes are boxes that users can create as desired. Access to user boxes can be restricted with a password.



- When the following paper sizes are selected for the originals or the print paper, [Store to e-Filing] is not available. Additionally, when paper of those sizes is also included in a part of the documents, the printing job cannot be stored in e-Filing either.
  - Custom paper
  - Non-standard size paper (bypass tray)
  - TAB paper
- When you store a document in e-Filing using the printer driver, the printing image (not the original document in your computer) will be stored in e-Filing.
- Documents stored in e-Filing are retained in the best image quality for printing. If you want to download them into your computer in a higher image quality, scan the original documents and store them in e-Filing.

Tips

- You can manage the files within a box from the touch panel display. Refer to the *e-Filing Guide* to manage files in a box.
- You can also manage the files within a box using the e-Filing web utility. Refer to the e-Filing Guide.

#### Saving a print job to a public box

- 1 Display the [Basic] tab menu.
- 9 Select [Store to e-Filing] in the [Print Job] box.

Normal Print 💦	Letter (8 1/2 x 11")
Normal Print	📕 🦊 Print Paper Sjze:
(U) Scheduled Print	Same as Original Size 👻
🛷 Private Print	
Proof Print	Paper Source:
Hold Print	Auto
+ Print to Overlay File	Paper Type:
🕬 Store to e-Filing 📐 🛛	Plain
+ Multiple Job Type	Destination:

- 3
  - Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## ▲ Select [Public Box].



**5** When you specify a folder in which the print job is to be stored in a Public Box, enter the folder name in the [Box Folder] box.

Store to:	Pass <u>w</u> ord:
000 Public Box 🔻	
Box <u>F</u> older:	
Folder01	
Print K	

#### Notes

- If the entered folder name is not found, a new folder is created under this box.
- Enter the folder name within 64 characters.
- If the number of folders has reached 100, you cannot create any more.
- **6** If you print the job as well as save it to the Public Box, select the [Print] check box.
- 7 Click [OK].
- 8 Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The print job is saved to the public box.

#### Saving a print job to a user box

**1** Display the [Basic] tab menu.

**2** Select [Store to e-Filing] in the [Print Job] box.

Normal Print 💦	Letter (8 1/2 x 11")
Normal Print	📕 🦊 Print Paper Size:
🕓 Scheduled Print 🏻 🎽	Same as Original Size
🛷 Private Print	
Proof Print	Paper Source:
Hold Print	Auto
• 💓 Print to Overlay File	Paper Type:
🐲 Store to e-Filing	Plain
+ Multiple Job Typ	Destination:

3 Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

4 Select a user box to save a print job and enter the password (maximum 20-digit) for the user box in the [Password] box if required.

Store to:	Pass <u>w</u> ord:
001 User01	····· N
Box Eolder:	×2
Print	
OK	Cancel

**5** When you specify a folder in which the print job is to be stored in a user box, enter the folder name in the [Box Folder] box.

<u>S</u> tore to:	Pass <u>w</u> ord:
001 User01 🔹	•••••
Box <u>F</u> older:	
Folder01	
Erint 🗸	
Ο	Cancel

#### Notes

- If the entered folder name is not found, a new folder is created under this box.
- Enter the folder name within 64 characters.
- If the number of folders has reached 100, you cannot create any more.

**6** If you print the job as well as saving to a box, select the [Print] check box.

## 7 Click [OK].

## 8 Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The print job is saved to the specified user box.

## □ Multiple Job Type

The Multiple Job Type feature allows you to combine any of Scheduled Print, Private Print, Hold Print, Proof Print, Proof Private Print and Proof Hold Print, with Store to e-Filing.

For example, you can store a job in the specified e-Filing of this equipment and print it at the specified time by combining Scheduled Print and Store to e-Filing.

To use the Multiple Job Type feature, click [...] on the right of the [Print Job] box and select the job types to be combined.

#### Notes

- Before performing Scheduled Print, make sure the date and time of this equipment and your computer are the same.
- When you print multiple copies, each of which is to be sent as an individual print job by your application, all of the copies are printed even if you set Proof Print. In this a case, perform Proof Print of only one copy first, and then change the number of copies on the touch panel to print the rest.
- Documents stored in e-Filing are retained with the optimal image quality for printing. If you want to download them into your computer with a higher image quality, scan the original documents and store them in e-Filing.
- When you store a document in e-Filing using the printer driver, it is stored as an image. This is not stored in e-Filing in the same way as the original document is stored in your computer.

Tips

- You can manage files in e-Filing on the touch panel. For instructions on how to manage them, refer to the *e-Filing Guide*.
- You can also manage files in e-Filing using the e-Filing web utility. For instructions on how to manage them with the e-Filing web utility, refer to the *e-Filing Guide*.

#### Printing with the Multiple Job Type feature

- **1** Display the [Basic] tab menu.
- 9 Select [Multiple Job Type] in the [Print Job] box.

Normal Print 🔹 🛄	Letter (8 1/2 x 11")
Normal Print	🐥 🛛 Print Paper Size:
Scheduled Print	📇 Same as Original Size 👻
💣 Private Print	
Proof Print	Paper Source:
🕞 Hold Print	Auto
+ 💓 Print to Overlay File	Paper Type:
📲 Store to e-Filing	Plain
H Multiple Job Type	Destination:

**β** Click [...] on the right of the [Print Job] box.

The [Multiple Job Type] dialog box appears.

## ▲ Select a job type in the [Print Job] box.

- The setup screen is switched according to the selected job type.
- Set [Date] and [Time] if you select [Scheduled Print].

Print Job: Scheduled Print 🔹	Date 5/10/2011	 ▼ 20:01 ♦
Store to e-Filing	Pass <u>w</u> ord:	<i>К</i> г
000 Public Box 👻		

• Enter a password if you select [Private Print] or [Proof Private Print].

Private Print 💌	Password
Store to e-Filing Store to:	Pass <u>w</u> ord
000 Public Box 🔫	
Box <u>F</u> older:	

#### Notes

- Enter a password using the alphanumeric characters and symbol characters (ASCII code characters between 0x21 to 0x7E) in the [Password] box. The password must be between 1 and 63 characters.
- When you enter this password on the touch panel display, confidential documents will be printed. If you forget it, you will not be able to print them.

5	If you want to store a print job in this equipment, select the [Store to e-Filing] check box.
v	box.

Store to e-Filing     Su     Password:     000 Fublic Box	Password	Private Print
St Password:	•••••	
	Pass <u>w</u> ord:	<u>sinter</u>
Box Eolder:		

## **6** Select where the print job is stored at the [Store to] box.

• If you store the print job in a user box, enter a password if required.

Private Print 🔹	Password	
	•••••	
Store to e-Filing		
Store to:	Pass <u>w</u> ord:	
001 User01 📉	····· N	
Box <u>F</u> older:	4	2
-		<b>_</b>

7 When you specify a folder in which the print job is to be stored in the selected e-Filing, enter its folder name in the [Box Folder] box.

Print Job:		
Private Print 👻	Password	
	*****	
Store to e-Filing Store to:	Pass <u>w</u> ord:	
001 User01 👻	•••••	
Box <u>F</u> older:		
Folder01		
N		

#### Notes

- If the entered folder name is not found, a new folder is created in the selected e-Filing under this name.
- Enter a folder name within 64 characters.
- If the number of folders has reached 100, you cannot create any more.

## 8 Click [OK].

#### **9** Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

- If you select [Scheduled Print], the job is printed at the specified date and time.
- If you select [Private Print] or [Proof Private Print], the job is stored in this equipment as a Private Print job. Print this job on the touch panel.
  - P.80 "Printing private print jobs"
- If you select [Hold Print] or [Proof Hold Print], the job is stored in this equipment as a Hold Print job. Print this job on the touch panel.
  - P.81 "Printing hold print jobs"
- If you select [Proof Print], [Proof Private Print] or [Proof Hold Print], one sample copy is printed and the rest is stored in this equipment as a Proof Print job. Print this job on the touch panel.
   P.82 "Printing proof print jobs"
- If you select the [Store to e-Filing] check box, the print job is stored in the specified e-Filing.

## Layout and finishing options in [Basic] tab menu

Using the printer driver, you can set various layout options to suit your preferences. In this section various printing functions enabled with the [Basic] tab menu are explained.

- P.90 "Fitting images within paper size"
- P.91 "Printing color documents in gray scale"
- P.92 "Printing color documents in twin colors"

## □ Fitting images within paper size

You can automatically enlarge or reduce an image to fit into a specified paper size, or manually set the scale to enlarge or reduce it. Also you can combine the desired paper size and reproduction ratio.

#### Printing enlarged or reduced image to fit the specified paper size

- 1 Display the [Basic] tab menu.
- 2 Select the document size on the [Original Paper Size] box. Then select the paper size that you want to print at the [Print Paper Size] box.



The document image is automatically enlarged or reduced depending on the original paper size and print paper size.

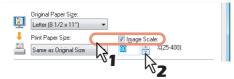
3 Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## ▲ Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The enlarged or reduced image is printed to fit the specified paper size.

#### Printing an enlarged or reduced image by specifying the scale manually

- 1 Display the [Basic] tab menu.
- **2** Check the [Image Scale] box. Then enter the scale.



The scale can be set from 25% to 400% in units of 1%.

- **3** Set any other print options you require and click [OK].
- ▲ Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

An enlarged or reduced image is printed in the specified scale.

#### Combining a paper size and a reproduction ratio

You can combine the desired paper size and reproduction ratio, for example, printing an A4 original to A3 copy paper at a reproduction ratio of 100%.

- Display the [Basic] tab menu.
- 2 Select the document size on the [Original Paper Size] box. Then select the paper size that you want to print at the [Print Paper Size] box.



The document image is automatically enlarged or reduced depending on the original paper size and print paper size.

#### **3** Check the [Image Scale] box. Then enter the scale.

Uriginal Paper Size: Letter (8 1/2 x 11'')	•
Print Paper Size:	▼ Image Scale: ▼ 125

The scale can be set from 25% to 400% in units of 1%.

#### Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## **5** Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The image is printed on paper of the specified size at the specified reproduction ratio.

## Printing color documents in gray scale

This equipment can print in color as well as black and white. The printer driver automatically detects whether the document uses only color or only black and white, and it prints the document accordingly. Additionally, you can select the black and white mode manually to print a color document in the gray scale to reduce the print cost and consumption of color toners.

#### Printing a color document in gray scale

- **1** Display the [Basic] tab menu.
- Select [Black and White] at the [Color] box.



Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

#### Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The print job is printed in the gray scale.

## Printing color documents in twin colors

This equipment can print in the twin color mode.

When the document is printed in the twin color mode, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the colored parts of the document are printed in a specified color.

#### Printing a color document in twin color mode

- 1 Display the [Basic] tab menu.
- **2** Select [Twin Color] at the [Color] box.



- Click [Details].
  - The [Twin Color] dialog box appears.
- 4 Select a color in which the color parts of the document are to be printed at the [Color] box and click [OK].

Twin Color			×
Select the color you want to conve	rt the non-black	part of the document.	
<u>C</u> olor:			
Red			
	)	Cancel	
	2		

- **5** Set any other print options you require and click [OK].
- 6 Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The print job is printed in the twin color mode.

## Layout and finishing options in [Finishing] tab menu

Using the printer driver, you can set various layout options to suit your preferences. In this section various printing functions enabled with the [Finishing] tab menu are explained.

- P.92 "Sort printing"
- P.94 "Printing on both sides of a sheet"
- P.94 "Making a booklet"
- P.97 "Printing several pages on one sheet"
- P.98 "Stapling"
- P.98 "Hole punching"
- P.99 "Dividing one image into multiple sheets (Poster Print)"

## □ Sort printing

You can select how multiple copies of a document to be output, such as separately for each copy, grouping each page, and alternating the paper direction for each copy.

#### Sorting printed documents according to the copies



**2** Enter the number of copies to be printed at the [Number of Copies] box.



**3** Display the [Finishing] tab menu.

▲ Select [Sort Copies] icon at [Copy Handling].



**5** Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## 6 Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The printed documents are sorted according to the copies.

#### Sorting printed documents according to the pages

For example, assume that you have a three-page job (A, B, C) and you want three copies of each page in this order (AAA, BBB, CCC).

- 1 Display the [Basic] tab menu.
- 2 Enter the number of copies to be printed at the [Number of Copies] box.



- **2** Display the [Finishing] tab menu.
- ▲ Select [Group Copies] icon at [Copy Handling].



- 5 Set any other print options you require and click [OK].
- 6 Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.
  - The printed documents are sorted according to the pages.

#### Sorting printed documents horizontally and vertically for each copy

#### Notes

- Rotated Sort Copies can be enabled only when printing on Letter, A4, B5, or 16K.
- To make Rotated Sort Copies, sheets to be used must be placed both horizontally and vertically (example: A4 and A4-R).
- Display the [Basic] tab menu.
- Enter the number of copies to be printed at the [Number of Copies] box.



- **3** Display the [Finishing] tab menu.
- ▲ Select the [Rotated Sort] icon at [Copy Handling].

<u>С</u> ору На	ndling:	
1.2.3	1.1.1	1.2.3
		h

**5** Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## 6 Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The printed documents are alternately sorted horizontally and vertically for each copy.

## **Printing on both sides of a sheet**

You can print on both sides of the paper.

#### Printing on both sides of paper

- 1 Display the [Finishing] tab menu.
- **2** Select the [2-Sided Printing] check box and select the direction to be printed.



**Long Edge** — Select this to print on both sides of the paper with a margin on the long edge. **Short Edge** — Select this to print on both sides of the paper with a margin on the short edge.

#### Tip

You can also set booklet printing at the [2-Sided Printing] option by selecting the [Booklet] icon. For instructions on how to perform booklet printing, see the following section. P.94 "Making a booklet"

#### Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

#### Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The print job is printed on both sides of paper in the specified direction.

## Making a booklet

You can create a document in a book- or magazine-style publication by selecting the Booklet option. Also you can create a folded booklet by automatically stapling (saddle-stitching) and folding the center of a printed document. For example, if you create a document on Letter-size paper ( $8\frac{1}{2} \times 11$  inches) and then print in booklet mode, the yield is a  $5\frac{1}{2}$ -x- $8\frac{1}{2}$ - inch booklet. Each page has been scaled to fit on half a sheet and reordered so that the booklet is properly paginated when folded.

To retain your original document size when printing booklets, select the booklet size to be the same as your original document size. Then your  $8\frac{1}{2}$ -inch document is printed on Ledger size paper (11 x 17 inches) and reordered so that, when folded, the yield is an  $8\frac{1}{2}$ -x-11-inch booklet. You can select from the following page-size options when printing a booklet:

- Letter Booklet on Ledger
- A4 Booklet on A3
- B5 Booklet on B4

#### Creating a booklet

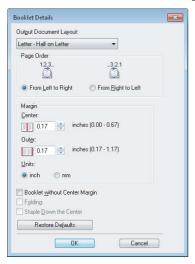
- **1** Display the [Finishing] tab menu.
- **7** Select the [2-Sided Printing] check box and select the [Booklet] icon.



#### 2 Click [Details].

The [Booklet Details] dialog box appears.

▲ Select the booklet size at the [Output Document Layout] box.



**A5 on A4** — Select this to print an A5 size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on A4 paper to fit on half a sheet (A5).

**A4 on A3** — Select this to print an A4 size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on A3 paper to fit on half a sheet (A4).

**B5 on B4** — Select this to print a B5 size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on B4 paper to fit on half a sheet (B5). **B6 on B5** — Select this to print a B6 size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on B5 paper to fit on half a sheet (B6). **1/2 Folio on Folio** — Select this to print a 1/2 Folio size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on Folio paper to fit on half a sheet (B6).

**A6 on A5** — Select this to print an A6 size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on A5 paper to fit on half a sheet (A6).

**Letter-Half on Letter** — Select this to print a 1/2 Letter size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on Letter paper to fit on half a sheet.

**LT on LD** — Select this to print a Letter size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on Ledger paper to fit on half a sheet (Letter).

**1/2 LG on LG** — Select this to print a 1/2 Legal size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on Legal paper to fit on half a sheet.

**1/2 Statement on Statement** — Select this to print a 1/2 Statement size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on Statement paper to fit on half a sheet.

**1/2 Comp on Comp** — Select this to print a 1/2 Computer size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on Computer paper to fit on half a sheet.

**1/2 13LG on 13LG** — Select this to print a 1/2 13 inch LG size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on 13 inch LG paper to fit on half a sheet.

**1/2 8.5SQ on 8.5SQ** — Select this to print a 1/2 8.5 inch SQ size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on 8.5 inch SQ paper to fit on half a sheet.

**32K on 16K** — Select this to print a 32K size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on 16K paper to fit on half a sheet. **16K on 8K** — Select this to print a 16K size booklet. Every 2 pages are printed on 8K paper to fit on half a sheet.

Select the page order for booklet in the [Page Order] option.

**From Left to Right** — Select this to print the pages from left to right. **From Right to Left** — Select this to print the pages from right to left.

If you want to add a margin space between facing pages, enter a width in the [Center] box, and if you want to add a margin on the outside edge, enter a width in the [Outer] box.

- · You can change the unit of the margin at the [Units].
- The center margin can be set from 0.00 inch to 0.67 inches in units of 0.01 inch when the unit is inches, and from 0.00 mm to 16.90 mm in units of 0.10 mm when the unit is mm. The printed images will be reduced according to the margin setting.
- The outer margin can be set from 0.17 inch to 1.17 inches in units of 0.01 inch when the unit is inches, and from 4.20 mm to 29.60 mm in units of 0.10 mm when the unit is mm.

The printed images will be reduced according to the margin setting.

Tip

If you select the [Booklet without Center Margin] check box, the value in [Center] becomes invalid and the center margin becomes 0 mm (inches).

## **7** Select the [Folding] check box if you want to fold the document at its center.

#### Note

The Folding option is available only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed in either the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP, or the Saddle Stitch Finisher MJ-1106 (optional) is installed in the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP.

**8** If you want to double-staple the center, select the [Staple Down the Center] check box.

#### Note

[Staple Down the Center] is available only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed and configured on the [Device Settings] tab.

- **Q** Click [OK] to close the [Booklet Details] dialog box.
- Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## **11** Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The print job is printed as a booklet.

#### Note

If the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed, the printed document is folded at its center when the [Folding] check box is selected. If this is not installed, fold the printed document manually.

## Printing several pages on one sheet

The N-up feature allows you to print several pages of a document on one sheet of paper. This feature is very useful for browsing a large number of pages for appearance or page order.

For example, to check the navigation path of a number of web pages or review the narrative of a slide presentation, using N-up is not only convenient but conserves paper as well.

#### Tip

When [Overlay Image] is selected together with the N-up feature, the overlay images are printed per sheet, not per page. If you want to print them on each page, select the [Print on Each Page] check box in [Overlay Image] on the [Effect] tab.

P.57 "[Effect] tab"

#### Printing multiple pages per sheet

- 1 Display the [Finishing] tab menu.
- 2 Select how many pages you want to print on a single sheet at the [Number of pages per Sheet] box.



- 2 pages Select this to print images from 2 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 4 pages Select this to print images from 4 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 6 pages Select this to print images from 6 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 8 pages Select this to print images from 8 pages arranged on one sheet.

**9 pages** — Select this to print images from 9 pages arranged on one sheet.

16 pages — Select this to print images from 16 pages arranged on one sheet.

#### **3** Select how the pages are arranged on one sheet in the [Direction of print] option.



Left to Right — Select this to arrange pages horizontally from the left and printed top to bottom on one sheet. Right to Left — Select this to arranged pages horizontally from the right and printed top to bottom on one sheet. Left to Right by column — Select this to arrange pages vertically from the top and printed left to right on one sheet.

**Right to Left by column** — Select this to arrange pages vertically from the top and printed right to left on one sheet.

#### Tip

Items that can be selected in [Direction of print] may vary depending on the number of pages selected at the [Number of pages per Sheet] box.

- 4 If you want to draw a line around each page, select the [Draw Borders Around Pages] check box.
- **5** Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## 6 Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

Multiple pages are printed per sheet.

## □ Stapling

You can staple sets of paper to exit from the equipment.

Note

Stapling is not available if a Finisher (optional) is not installed.

#### Stapling the paper

1 Display the [Finishing] tab menu.

**2** Select the [Staple] check box. Select a stapling option.



Upper Left — Select this to staple the printed document at the upper left.
Upper Right — Select this to staple the printed document at the upper right.
Center Top — Select this to double-staple the printed document along the top edge.
Middle Left — Select this to double-staple the printed document along the left side.
Center Double — Select this to fold and double-staple the printed document in the center.

#### Notes

- The selectable options vary depending on the paper size.
- [Center Double] can be selected only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed and configured on the [Device Settings] tab.

3 Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

#### Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The output is stapled for each copy.

## □ Hole punching

Select this to punch holes on printed sheets of paper to exit from the equipment.

#### Note

Δ

Hole punching is not available if a Hole Punch Unit (optional) is not installed.

#### **Punching holes**

- 1 Display the [Finishing] tab menu.
- Select the [Hole Punch] check box. Select a hole punch option.



**Center Top** — Select this to punch holes along the top edge. **Middle Left** — Select this to punch holes along the left side.

- 3 Set any other print options you require and click [OK].
- ▲ Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.
  - Holes are punched.

## Dividing one image into multiple sheets (Poster Print)

You can print one large image into more than one sheet of paper by dividing it. The divided images on the multiple sheets of paper are then reconnected, so that you can create a large publication such as a poster.

#### Notes

- The Poster Print option is not available when any of the Custom Paper Size, Number of pages per sheet, 2-Sided Printing, Watermark, Overlay Image and Sheet Insertion options is set.
- The Poster Print option is available only when any of the sizes below is selected for [Print Paper Size] on the [Basic] tab.
   A4, A3, LT, LD

## **Performing Poster Print**

1 2		splay the [Finishing] tab menu. lect the [Poster Print] check box and then click [Details].				
	Poster Print	Detail <u>s</u>				
		OK Cancel Help				

The [Poster Print] dialog box appears.



Select the number of sheets on which the image is printed, and then click [OK].

Poster Print				×
Output <u>N</u> umber of	Sheets			
🔘 1x2	2x2	🔘 3x3	© 4x4	
	ОК	1	Cancel	

- 1x2 Select this to divide the image into 2 sheets.
- 2x2 Select this to divide the image into 4 sheets.
- **3x3** Select this to divide the image into 9 sheets.
- 4x4 Select this to divide the image into 16 sheets.

#### Notes

- [1x2] is selectable only when A4/A3 is selected for [Print Paper Size].
- When you use the Poster Print option, disable the [Do not Print Blank Pages] option on the [Others] tab. If
  you use the Poster Print option while [Do not Print Blank Pages] is left ON, blank pages in the divided image
  are not printed.
- ▲ Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## **5** Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The image is divided and printed into the specified number of sheets of paper.

## Finishing options in [Paper Handling] tab menu

Using the printer driver, you can set various layout options to suit your preferences. In this section various printing functions enabled with the [Paper Handling] tab menu are explained.

- P.100 "Inserting different types of paper"
- P.102 "Interleaving pages"

## □ Inserting different types of paper

You can insert a different type of sheet into a specified location in the printed documents. This is useful when you want to add front and back covers, or sheets between chapters. Both printed and blank sheets can be inserted.

#### Printing or inserting a front cover and back cover

#### 1 Display the [Paper Handling] tab menu.

2 To print or insert a front cover, select the [Use Front Cover] check box and select the drawer where the cover paper is loaded at the [Source] box. Then select whether you are inserting a blank cover or printed front cover at the [Print Style] box.



**Do not print on page** — Select this to insert a blank front cover. **Print one side of the page** — Select this to print the first page of the document on a front side of a cover. **Print both sides of page** — Select this to print the first two pages of the document on both sides of a cover.

#### Notes

- When [Auto] is selected in the [Source] box, the paper is automatically selected according to the printed document size.
- To insert thick paper, select Bypass Tray and set Thick for [Paper Type] for [Bypass Tray] in the [Drawer Settings] dialog box of the [Device Settings] tab in the printer driver.
- [Print both sides of page] is available only when 2-Sided printing is enabled at the [Finishing] tab.

**3** To print or insert a back cover, select the [Use Back Cover] check box and set the [Source] and [Print Style] options that you require.



How to set the Source and Print Style options is the same as for the [Use Front Cover] option.

**4** To print or insert sheets between the pages, select the [Insert Pages] check box and click [Edit].



The [Insert Pages] dialog box appears.

Up to 50 pages can be inserted.

Note

**5** Enter the page numbers to which you want to insert the sheet in each [Page] box and select the [Print Style], [Paper Source], and [Paper Type] options as you require.

<sup>o</sup> age:	Print Style:	F	Paper Source:	Paper Type:	-
	Blank	7	Auto	- Plain	¥ H
	Blank	÷	Auto	~  Plain	*
	Blank	-	Auto	- Plain	-
	Blank	+	Auto	√ Plain	*
	Blank	-	Auto	→ Plain	Ŧ
	Blank	+	Auto	- Plain	*
	Blank	-	Auto	→ Plain	Ŧ
	Blank	+	Auto	- Plain	÷.
ab Extensio Tab Exte		Tab	Extension:	5 👘	
	n/Image Shift Width	12.0	ge Shift <u>W</u> idth: 0 🔆 mn s:		
Tab Exte	n/Image Shift Width	12.0 Imag 12.0 Unit:	ge Shift <u>W</u> idth: 0 🔆 mn s:	n (10.0 - 20.0)	

**6** Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## 7 Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

A front cover and back cover are inserted into the printed document.

## □ Interleaving pages

This feature is useful when you want to insert a different type of paper, or from another source, between every page of your print job. For example, you could use this option to insert blank or color sheets between overhead transparencies.

#### Inserting sheets between every page of a print job

**1** Display the [Paper Handling] tab menu.

2 <sup>To i</sup>

To insert sheets between every page, select the [Interleave Pages] check box and select the drawer where the desired paper is loaded at the [Source] box.



#### Notes

- When [Auto] is selected in the [Source] box, the paper is automatically selected according to the printed document size.
- To insert thick paper, select Bypass Tray and set Thick for [Paper Type] for [Bypass Tray] in the [Drawer Settings] dialog box of the [Device Settings] tab in the printer driver.
- **2** To print the previous page on interleaved sheets, select the [Duplicate] check box.

This equipment prints every previous page on interleaved sheets which are inserted after the page so that you can duplicate a document.

## **4** Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## **5** Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The sheets are interleaved between every page.

## Finishing options in [Effect] tab menu

Using the printer driver, you can set various layout options to suit your preferences. In this section various printing functions enabled with the [Effect] tab menu are explained.

- P.103 "Printing with watermarks"
- P.106 "Printing with an overlay file"

## Printing with watermarks

Watermarks overprint your document with useful information, such as [TOP SECRET,] [CONFIDENTIAL,] [DRAFT,] [ORIGINAL,] or [COPY.]. You can choose from several predefined watermarks or you can create and save your own custom watermarks.

Watermarks are text only. To add graphics or other document elements, use image overlays instead.

#### Printing a watermark

1 Display the [Effect] tab menu.

)	Select the	watermark te	o be	printed at	the	[Watermark]	box.
				P		[	

	Watermar <u>k</u> :			
	None		+	
	None		l	
	TOP SECRET			
	CONFIDENTIAL	N		
	DRAFT	<b>ドラ</b>		
	ORIGINAL	-		
**	COPY			
_	TRONG			

#### Note

5

You can create a new watermark if there is none you want to apply on the box.  $\square$  P.104 "Creating or editing a watermark"

## **3** If you want to print the watermark on only the first page, select the [Print on First Page Only] check box.

Watermar <u>k</u> :	
CONFIDENTIAL	
Add Edit Delete	
Print on First Page Only	
$\mathcal{M}$	

Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

The print job is printed with the watermark.

#### Creating or editing a watermark

1	Click [Add] to create a new waterma [Edit] to edit a watermark.	ark, or select one that you want to edit and click
	Watermar <u>k</u> :	
	None 🗸	
	Add Edit Delete	

The [Watermark] dialog box appears.

Print on First Page Only

				Caption:
Γ				ABCDEF
				Font Name: <u>S</u> tyle:
				Arial 🔹 Regular 👻
	4	ABCDE	F	Font Size:
				72 📄 pt (6-300)
				Color:
L				Gray 👻 Browse
itior				Angle: 0 * ∢ ► ►
	Γ	$\overline{\mathbf{T}}$	7	-90 0 90
	l€	+	≯	Print Style
	ĸ	$\underline{\mathbf{v}}$	И	Solid
				⑦ Draw as Outline
				© Iransparency:
	Rest	ore De	efaults	0 50 100

# Enter the watermark text in the [Caption] box. You can enter up to 63 characters for the [Caption] box. However, if too many characters are entered, the watermark may not be printed correctly.

2 Select the position of the watermark in [Position].

Select the desired icon for the position.

- A Select a font for the watermark at the [Font Name] box.
- **5** Select a font style for the watermark at the [Style] box.

## 6 Enter the font size in the [Font Size] box.

You can enter any integer between 6 and 300pt in units of 1pt.

#### Select a color for the watermark at the [Color] box.

If your preferred color is not listed in the box, click [Browse] to display the color palette and add your color.

#### Notes

- This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system.
- When [Black and White] is selected at the [Color] box on the [Basic] tab, the [Color] box is not available.

#### **Q** To rotate the watermark, enter the number of degrees in the [Angle] box.

- You can enter from -90 degrees to 90 degrees in units of 1 degree in the [Angle] box.
  - You can also set the angle using the scroll bar.
- **9** Select how the watermark text is printed from [Solid], [Draw as Outline], and [Transparency].

**Solid** — Select this to print a solid type of watermark.

Draw as Outline — Select this to print an outline type of watermark.

**Transparency** — Select this for a transparent watermark. Set the transparent ratio from 0 to 100% in units of 1%. You can also set the transparent ratio using the scroll bar.

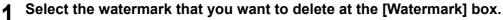
#### **10** Click [OK] to save the watermark settings.

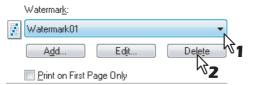
The watermark is added or edited.

#### **Deleting a watermark**

#### Note

You can delete the default watermarks. However, they cannot be restored by clicking [Restore Defaults].





## 2 Click [Delete].

The [Confirm Delete] dialog box appears.

3 Click [Yes].

Confirm I	Delete		×
Are you s	ure you want to dele	te it?	
	Yes A	<u>N</u> o	

The watermark is deleted.

## □ Printing with an overlay file

Using image overlays ensures that widely-used images are readily available and consistently reproduced. Image overlays are independent documents that are merged into other documents during printing and thereby increase the time required to print a job. To superimpose text on your document, it may be faster to use watermarks.

To print with an overlay file, you must first create an overlay file.

P.83 "Creating an overlay file"

#### Notes

• When [Overlay Image] is selected together with the N-up feature, the overlay images are printed per sheet, not per page. If you want to print them on each page, select the [Print on Each Page] check box in [Overlay Image] on the [Effect] tab.

P.57 "[Effect] tab"

• Both the overlay file and the documents on which you superimpose the overlay image must be created in the same size, color mode, and orientation.

#### Printing an overlay image as a print job

- 1 Display the [Effect] tab menu.
- 9 Select the overlay image name to be used in the [Overlay Image] box.

Overlay Imag	je:		
None		Ň	
None Multiple Ove	erlays	13	1
Overlay01			
 Overlay02	_ <sup>\</sup> √2		

#### Note

If you use different overlay images for odd/even pages or use overlay images only for the specified pages, select [Multiple Overlays] and set them in its dialog box.

**3** If you want to print the overlay image over the document, select the [Print Over the Document] check box.

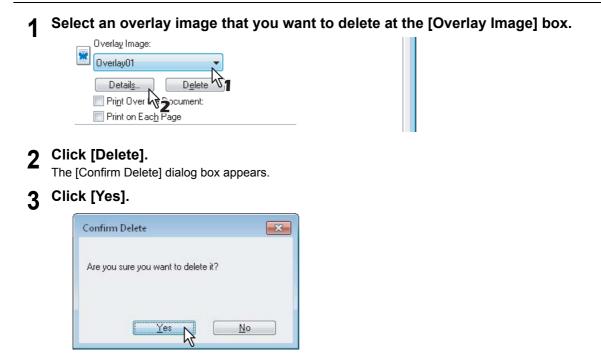


▲ Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

## 5 Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

• The print job is printed with the overlay image.

# Deleting an overlay image



The overlay image is deleted.

# Using various types of paper

This equipment allows you to print on various types of paper. The procedure below is for print jobs which require precautions before you place the paper.

P.108 "Printing on tab paper"

P.111 "Printing on paper larger than standard sizes"

# Printing on tab paper

This equipment supports tab printing, which can be done in the tab extension of the tab paper. The job will be output in the inner tray.

# Notes

- This equipment can print only on the Letter-sized or A4-sized tab paper.
- If misprinting occurs while multiple tab pages are being printed continuously, toner may adhere to the reverse side of the second and subsequent sheet of paper. To avoid this, it is recommended to print tab paper as a separate job for each page so that this equipment performs cleaning before printing the next sheet.
- When printing tab paper, it may be caught in the exit of the inner tray because the roller failed to deliver the tab extension to the exit. In that case, remove the tab paper before printing the next job.

# Printing a document on tab paper

**1** Create a Letter sized or A4 sized document and place the text or object that should appear on the tab extension as described below.

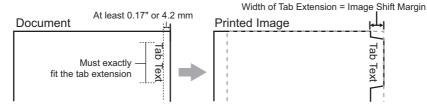
When you create a document for tab printing, place the text or object that should appear on the tab extension on the right side of the document. You must place the text in the height that exactly fits the tab extension.

## Note

The selectable range of the edge margin differs depending on the model. See the following for setting this option:

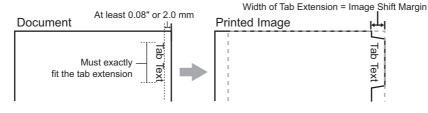
For the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP

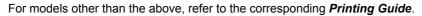
The margin between the shifted text and right edge of the tab extension must have at least 0.17 inches (4.2 mm) of space because any data in this space are not printed. Enter the same value in the [Tab Extension] box and the [Image Shift Width] box.

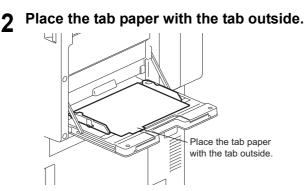


#### - For the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP

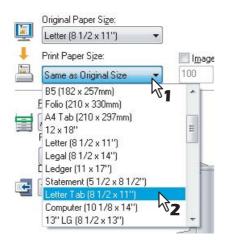
The margin between the shifted text and right edge of the tab extension must have at least 0.08 inches (2.0 mm) of space because any data in this space are not printed. Enter the same value in the [Tab Extension] box and the [Image Shift Width] box.







**3** When printing a document, display the [Basic] tab menu of the printer driver properties, select the document size in the [Original Paper Size] box and either [Letter Tab] or [A4 Tab] (according to the document size) in the [Print Paper Size] box.



The [Primary Tab Dialog] dialog box appears.

**4** In the [Tab Manufacturer] box, select the product name of the tab paper that you use, or select [Custom] when you use other manufactured tab paper.

	<u>T</u> ab Manufacturer:
Tab Extension 🔶 🖌	Blanks USA copy Tabs(5Banks) LT + 1/2" Tab
	Tab Egtension:
> >	0.500 inches (0.393 - 0.787)
→- <b>→</b>	Image Shift <u>W</u> idth:
F	0.500 🚔 inches (0.000 - 1.181)
	Units:
	💿 inch 🛛 🔿 mm

**5** When you select [Custom] in the [Tab Manufacturer] option, enter the width of the tab extension in the [Tab Extension] box.

6

Enter the width to shift the printed image in the [Image Shift Width] box. If you created a document as described in Step 1, enter the width of the tab extension here.

## Note

The selectable range of the edge margin differs depending on the model. See the following for setting this option:

- For the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP

The margin between the shifted text and right edge of the tab extension must have at least 0.17 inches (4.2 mm) of space because any data in this space are not printed. Enter the same value in the [Tab Extension] box and the [Image Shift Width] box.

For the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP
 The margin between the shifted text and right edge of the tab extension must have at least 0.08 inches (2.0 mm) of space because any data in this space are not printed. Enter the same value in the [Tab Extension] box and the [Image Shift Width] box.

For models other than the above, refer to the corresponding *Printing Guide*.

- 7 Click [OK].
- Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

Press [JOB STATUS] on the touch panel.

The print job list appears.

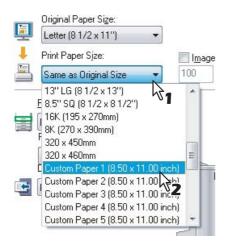
- **11** Select the desired job in the print job list and then press the [START] button on the control panel.
  - The print job is printed on the tab paper.
  - For the detailed instructions on how to use the control panel, see the following page:
     P.186 "Monitoring the Print Job Status"

# **Printing on paper larger than standard sizes**

The procedure below is for printing on paper larger than standard sizes defined in the custom paper size setting. (Example: Largest size: 12.34 x 47.24 inches (313.4 x 1200 mm)) Custom paper sizes can be defined in the [Other] tab menu.

# Printing on paper larger than standard sizes

**1** Display the properties of the printer driver and select the custom paper size in [Print Paper Size] of the [Basic] tab menu before starting printing.



- 9 Set any other print options you require and click [OK].
- Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.
- Place paper larger than the standard sizes on the bypass tray.

## Notes

- Do not mix it with other sizes.
- Print one sheet by one from the bypass tray even if you have set the number of copies as more than one.
- **5** Press [JOB STATUS] on the touch panel.

The print job list appears.

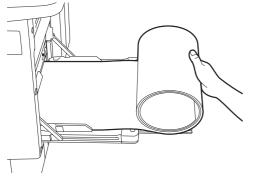
- 6 Select the desired job in the print job list and then press the [START] button on the control panel.
  - The print job is printed on paper larger than the standard sizes.
  - For the detailed instructions on how to use the control panel, see the following page:
     P.186 "Monitoring the Print Job Status"

# Inserting from the bypass tray

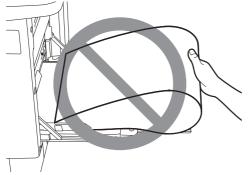
## When the paper is being fed into the equipment

## Notes

- Do not mix paper of different sizes.
- Place one sheet at a time on the bypass tray even if you wish to print multiple copies.
- Slightly curl the paper. Hold it gently as it is being fed into the equipment.



- Be careful not to cut your fingers on the edge of paper when you hold it.
- Make sure that the trailing edge of the paper will not be fed into the equipment while you are holding it.

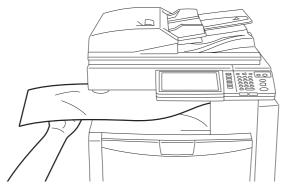


• The paper will be printed with a resolution of 300 dpi.

## When the paper is coming out of the equipment

# Notes

• Hold the paper gently as it is coming out of the equipment.



- Be careful not to cut your fingers on the edge of paper when you hold it.
- Do not pull out the paper forcibly as it is exiting from the equipment.

# Switching equipment to print jobs

When more than one piece of OKI MFP series equipment exists over a network, you can switch it to another one on the printer driver menu.

If the equipment that you intended to use is busy with a large number of print jobs, for example, you can send your job to another piece of OKI MFP series equipment that is currently holding no print jobs and have it printed.

# Switching equipment to print jobs

1	Display the [Others] tab menu.				
2	Click [Output Devices].				
-	SNMP Communication	SNM <u>P</u> Settings			
	Output Devices	Add Printer			
	<u>C</u> ustom Paper Size				

The [Output Devices] dialog box appears.

#### Select [Print Job to Selected Devices]. 3

Output Devices	x
Output       Iotal Copies;         Image: Transmission of the second devices       Image: Transmission of the second devices         Image: Transmission of the second devices       Image: Transmission of the second devices         Image: Transmission of the second devices       Image: Transmission of the second devices	
Selected Devices:	
None 1 (1-999)	
Always Use This Setting	
OK Cancel Help	

Select the desired equipment in the [Selected Devices] boxes.

## Notes

- You can select more than one piece of equipment in the [Selected Devices] boxes. In this case, the same number of copies is printed from all of the pieces of equipment you selected.
- When you select the equipment in the [Selected Devices] boxes, make sure to select that which supports features enabling all the print options of the job.
  - Select equipment which enables stapling if the job needs that.
  - Select equipment which enables hole punching if the job needs hole.
  - Select equipment with the External Large Capacity Feeder (optional) installed if the job needs it.
  - Select color equipment if the job needs full- or twin-color printing.

Tips

- If you select the [Always Use This Setting] check box, you can omit the setting of the [Output Devices] dialog box from the next time.
- Equipment selected in the [Selected Devices] boxes must be registered in [Printer Folder]. If you want to use equipment not registered in [Printer Folder], add it in [Add Printer] on the [Others] tab of printer driver. P.67 "Add Printer"
- Click [OK] to close the [Output Devices] dialog box.

Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

7

# Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

A job is printed on the selected equipment.

# Notes

- If the selected equipment does not support features enabling the print options of the job, printing may not be performed properly.
- Department code confirmation for the selected equipment is not performed when the job is printed from the selected one. If a department code specified in the [Department Code] box on the [Others] tab is not recognized on it, Department Management for this print job is not performed.

# Splitting a print job across two pieces of equipment (Tandem Printing)

This feature splits one print job across two pieces of equipment to print it by means of copies. If you have to print documents with a large number of pages in a large number of copies, for example, you can have two pieces of OKI MFP series equipment on a network share this job to print by copies simultaneously, so that it can be done in a shorter time.

# Splitting a print job across two pieces of equipment (Tandem Printing)

1	Display the [Others] tab m	ienu.
2	Click [Output Devices].	
	SNMP Communication	SNM <u>P</u> Settings
	Output Devices	Add Printer
	Custom Paper Size	

The [Output Devices] dialog box appears.

# **3** Select [Split Job across Selected Devices].

Output Devices	×
Output Print Job to Selected Devices Split Job across Selected Devices Selecter Devices	
▼ 5 🐳 (1-999) Printer ▼ 5 🐳 (1-999)	
Always Use This Setting	-
OK Cancel	Help

4 Select two pieces of equipment in the [Selected Devices] boxes and then specify the number of copies for each one.

#### Notes

- If you select the [Auto] check box, the number of copies set in the [Total Copies] box is automatically and
  equally allocated to two pieces of equipment.
- When you select the equipment in the [Selected Devices] boxes, make sure to select that which supports
  features enabling all the print options of the job.
  - Select equipment which enables stapling if the job needs that.
  - Select equipment which enables hole punching if the job needs hole.
  - Select equipment with the External Large Capacity Feeder (optional) installed if the job needs it.
  - Select color equipment if the job needs full- or twin-color printing.

Tips

- If you select the [Always Use This Setting] check box, you can omit the setting of the [Output Devices] dialog box from the next time.
- Equipment selected in the [Selected Devices] boxes must be registered in [Printer Folder]. If you want to
  use equipment not registered in [Printer Folder], add it in [Add Printer] on the [Others] tab of printer driver.
   P.67 "Add Printer"

Click [OK] to close the [Output Devices] dialog box.

Set any other print options you require and click [OK].

7

# Click [OK] or [Print] to send the print job.

A job is printed on the selected equipment.

# Notes

- If the selected equipment does not support features enabling the print options of the job, printing may not be performed properly.
- Department code confirmation for the selected equipment is not performed when the job is printed from the selected one. If a department code specified in the [Department Code] box on the [Others] tab is not recognized on it, Department Management for this print job is not performed.

# 3

# **PRINTING FROM Macintosh**

This chapter provides the instructions on how to print from a client computer.

Printing From Application on Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.7.x	118
Considerations and limitations	
How to print from Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.7.x	
Page Setup dialog on Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.7.x	120
Print dialog on Mac OS X 10.3.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x	
Print dialog on Mac OS X 10.2.x	150

# Printing From Application on Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.7.x

Once you have installed the PPD file as described in "Installing the Printer on Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.7.x" of the **Software Installation Guide**, you can print directly from most of the Mac OS X applications.

# Considerations and limitations

- If you print a PDF file with "Preview" application on Mac OS X 10.2.x, the page order will be incorrect. Please use Adobe Reader.
- If any double-byte character is included in the user name or document name when printing is performed, the printing job is displayed with [OSX User] or [OSX Document] on the touch panel display of the equipment. The user name and document name are displayed as they are only for one-byte characters.
- The Cover Pages option of the Printer Features menu is available for Mac OS X 10.3.x or later.
- The Cover Pages option of the Printer Features menu and the booklet printing cannot be used at the same time.
- The Cover Pages option of the Printer Features menu and the N-up printing (multiple pages per sheet) cannot be used at the same time.
- The Cover Pages option of the Printer Features menu and the Cover Page option for sending a print job with a banner page cannot be used at the same time.
- The e-Filing function cannot be used together with Custom Paper Size, Magazine Sort, Twin Color, Hold Print, Proof Print, or Private Print.
- When the stapling or hole punching option is used in the e-Filing function, the following settings cannot be used. Even when any of these options is selected, it will be cleared.
  - Stapling
    - [Middle Right (Portrait) / Middle Bottom (Landscape)], [Lower Right (Portrait) / Lower Left (Landscape)], [Middle Bottom (Portrait) / Middle Left (Landscape)]
  - Hole Punch

[Long Edge Punch with 180 degree rotation], [Short Edge Punch with 180 degree rotation]

- To perform proof printing, private printing, hold printing, scheduled printing or e-Filing on Mac OS X 10.5, use LPR, AppleTalk or Bonjour.
- To perform proof printing, private printing, hold printing, scheduled printing or e-Filing on Mac OS X 10.6.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x, use LPR or Bonjour.
- To use the user authentication function on Mac OS X 10.3.x to Mac OS X 10.4.x, perform the domain settings on [Applications] > [Utilities] > [Directory Access] > [Services] > [BSD Flat and NIS].
- To use the user authentication function on Mac OS X 10.5.x, perform the domain settings on [Applications] > [Utilities]
   > [Directory Utilities] > [Services] > [BSD Flat and NIS].
- To use the user authentication function on Mac OS X 10.6.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x, perform the domain settings on [Accounts] > [Login Option] > [Network Account Server] > [Open the Directory Utility] > [Services] > [BSD Flat and NIS].

# How to print from Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.7.x

You do not need to switch printers before starting printing because they are all managed under the setting of [Print & Fax] of [System Preferences]. Once a printer is added to the Printer List, you can select any printer directly from the [Page Setup] dialog box or the [Print] dialog box.

# **D** Setting options and printing from Macintosh Computers

In Mac OS X applications, print options are set from both the [Page Setup] dialog box and the [Print] dialog box.

# **Printing from Macintosh applications**

- ▲ Open a file and select [Page Setup] from the [File] menu of the application.
- **2** Select the name of the equipment in the [Format For] box and specify the Page Setup settings for your print job.

	Settings:	Page Attributes		•
For	mat For:	157.69.73.250	a)	
Pa	per Size:	A4 20.99 by 29.70 cm		•
Orie				
	Scale: 🚺	100 %		
?			Cancel	ОК

Setting the Page Setup varies depending on how you want to print a document. P.120 "Page Attributes"

- **2** Click [OK] to save the Page Setup settings.
- A Select [Print] from the [File] menu of the application.
- **5** In the dialog box that appears, make sure the name of the equipment is selected at the [Printer] box and specify the Print settings for your print job.

Copies:		Collat	ad 🗍 T	we side	- <b>U</b>
	Access of the second se	Cona	ed 🔄 I	wo-510	20
Pages:		1	to: 1		
Paper Size:	A4		\$ 20.	99 by 29.	70 cm
Orientation:	11				
	TextEdit				
	🗌 Print	header ar	d foote	r	

Setting the Print Setup varies depending on how you want to print a document. P.125 "Print dialog on Mac OS X 10.3.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x" P.150 "Print dialog on Mac OS X 10.2.x"

# Note

The [Print] dialog boxes vary depending on applications.

# 6 Click [Print] to print a document.

## Note

The content set in the [Print] dialog box can be saved as [Presets]. Select [Save as] in the [Presets] box and save it under the desired name. If you use this preset content as a default setting, select it in the [Presets] box.

# ■ Page Setup dialog on Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.7.x

The [Page Setup] dialog boxes can be displayed by selecting the [Page Setup] command from the [File] menu of the application.

In the [Page Setup] dialog boxes, you can specify the Page Attributes settings and manage the Custom Page Size settings.

## Note

The [Page Setup] dialog boxes vary depending on applications. In some applications, it is not included in the [File] menu, but in the [Print] dialog boxes.

# □ Page Attributes

	Settings:	Page Attributes	\$
1	 Format For:	157.69.73.250	+
2	 Paper Size:		\$
		20.99 by 29.70 cm	
3	 Orientation:		
4	 Scale:	100 %	
	?		Cancel OK

## 1) Format For

This selects the printer to be used for printing.

## 2) Paper Size

This selects the size of a document to be printed.

Available original paper sizes are listed below:

- A3
- A4
- A5
- A6
- JB4
- JB5
- Ledger
- US Legal
- US Letter
- Statement (5 1/2 x 8 1/2")
- Folio
- Computer (10 1/8 x 14")
- 13"LG (8 1/2 x 13")

## Tips

- The default paper size is [US Letter] for the United States, and [A4] for the other countries.
- [305 x 457 mm], [12 x 18"], [320 x 450 mm], and [320 x 460 mm] is enabled only when the ES9460 MFP/ ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP is used.

• 8.5"SQ (8 1/2 x 8 1/2")

8K (270 x 390 mm)

• 320 x 450 mm

• 320 x 460 mm

• 16K (195 x 270 mm)

• Env-Com10 (4 1/8 x 9 1/2")

• Env-Mornarch (3 7/8 x 7 1/2")

Envelope DL (110 x 220 mm)
Envelope Cho-3 (120 x 235 mm)

Envelope You-4 (105 x 235 mm)

12 x 18"
305 x 457 mm

[Env-Com10 (4 1/8 x 9 1/2")], [Env-Mornarch (3 7/8 x 7 1/2")], [Envelope DL (110 x 220 mm)], [Envelope Cho-3 (120 x 235 mm)], and [Envelope You-4 (105 x 235 mm)] is enabled only when the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP is used.

## 3) Orientation

This sets the paper printing direction.

- **<u>Portrait</u>** The document is printed in the portrait direction.
- Landscape (90 degree) The document is printed in the landscape direction from left.
- Landscape (270 degree) The document is printed in the landscape direction from right. This is selectable only for Mac OS X 10.2.x to Mac OS X 10.4.x.

#### 4) Scale

This changes the size of the printed image on the page. Enter the zoom ratio to enlarge or reduce an image. You can set any integer from 1 to 10000(%) for the zoom ratio. For Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.4.x, the acceptable range for zoom ratio is from 25% to 400%.

# Custom Page Sizes

The PPD file for this equipment supports the Custom Page Sizes.

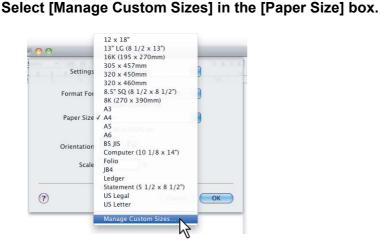
The procedure to create the Custom Page Size varies between the Mac OS X 10.4.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x and Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.3.x.

## Notes

1

- When you print on paper larger than standard sizes, print one sheet at a time.
   P.111 "Printing on paper larger than standard sizes"
- The paper sizes that can be set for the Custom Paper Size differ depending on the model to be used.

## Creating Custom Page Size on Mac OS X 10.4.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x



The [Custom Page Sizes] dialog box appears. If Mac OS X 10.6.x to 10.7.x is used, the [Custom Paper Size] dialog box appears.

# 2 Click [+].

	Paper Size:	0	(
		Width	Height
	Non-Printable	Area:	
	User Defined	1	\$
		0	
	0	Тор	(
	Left	0	Right
		Bottom	
+ - Duplicate			
2			
-10			
(?)		(Cancel)	OK

A new custom page size name is added to the list.

## Tip

If you want to create a new custom page size by duplicating an existing custom page size, select the custom page size name on the list and click [Duplicate].

**3** Double-click the added custom page size name on the list and rename the custom page size.

ustom01	Paper Size:	20.99 cm Width	29.7 cm Height
Ũ	Non-Printabl	e Area:	
	User Define	d	\$
		0.63 cm	
	0.63 cm	Тор	0.63 cm
	Left	1.45 cm	Right
		Bottom	
+ - Duplicate			
?)		Cancel	ОК

**4** Enter the width and height in the [Paper Size] boxes, and select the printer name of this equipment in the [Printer Margins] box.

Custom01	Paper Size: Non-Printable	21.5 cm Width Area:	30 cm Height
	157.69.73.2	250	-
	0.42 cm	0.42 cm Top	0.42 cm
	Left	0.42 cm	Right
		Bottom	
+ – Duplicate			
2		Cancel	OK

# Tips

- If Mac OS X 10.6.x to 10.7.x is used, enter the width and height in the [Paper Sizes] box, and then select your printer name in the [Non-Printable Area] box.
- Please use the margin settings that are automatically entered by selecting the printer name in the [Printer Margins] box.
- You can delete the created custom page size by clicking [-].

# 5 Click [OK].

The Custom Page Size is saved and it can be selected in the [Paper Size] box in the Page Attributes menu.

# Creating Custom Page Size on Mac OS X 10.2.4 to Mac OS X 10.3.x

**1** Select [Custom Paper Size] in the [Settings] box.

Settings:	✓ Page Attributes	
Format for:	Custom Paper Size Summary	
	Save As Default	
Paper Size:	US Letter	+
	8.50 in x 11.00 in	
Orientation:		1.
Scale:	100 %	
		ancel)

The Custom Paper Size menu is displayed.

# 2 Click [New].

			_		
				R	
			Dupl	-11	
			Del		
			Sa	ve	
Paper Size	Printer	Margins			
ruper size		Top:	_	in	
	in				
Height:					ir
Height: Width:	in Left:	in	Right:		

A new custom page size name is added to the list.

Tip

If you want to create a new custom page size by duplicating an existing custom page size, select the custom page size name on the list and click [Duplicate].

# **3** Rename the custom page size.

	Custom Si	ze 1						
							ew	
		• 0					licate	
						De	lete	
						Sa	ive )	
Paper Size	e	1	Printer	Margin	ns			
Height:	11.69	in		т	op: 0.	25	in	
Width:	8.26	in	Left:	0.25	in	Right:	0.25	in
				Botte	om: 0.	57	in	

**4** Enter the height and width in the [Page Size] boxes, and enter the printer margins in the [Printer Margins] boxes.

Custom S	ize 1
	New
	Duplicate
	Delete
	Save
aper Size	Printer Margins
Height: 7.5	in Top: 0.17 in
Width: 11	in Left: 0.17 in Right: 0.17 in
	Bottom: 0.17 in

#### Tips

- In the [Printer Margins] box, please enter "0.17" inch.
- You can delete the created custom page size by clicking [Delete].

# 5 Click [Save] and click [OK].

(	Custom Si	ze 1			-	-		
							New Juplicate	
							Delete	
						C	Save N	
							- hi	
Paper Siz	e	1	Printer	Margin	s			
Height:	7.5	in		To	p:	0.17	in	
Width:	11	in	Left:	0.17	in	Rig	ht: 0.17	
				Botto	m: [	0.17	in	

The Custom Page Size is saved and it can be selected in the [Paper Size] box in the Page Attributes menu.

# Print dialog on Mac OS X 10.3.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x

The [Print] dialog boxes can be displayed by selecting the [Print] command from the [File] menu of the application.

#### Tip

The [Print] dialog boxes are different between Mac OS X 10.2.x and Mac OS X 10.3.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x. Please see the following section for the descriptions of the [Print] dialog boxes for Mac OS X 10.2.x.

#### Notes

- The [Page Setup] dialog boxes varies depending on applications. In some applications, [Page Setup] may not be included in the [File] menu, but in the [Print] dialog boxes.
- The layout of the setting items may vary depending on the type of your Mac OS.

# Copies & Pages

In the Copies & Pages menu, you can set general print options such as the number of copies, and sort printing.

	Printer:	157.69.73.250	
	Presets:	Standard	2
1	 Copies:	□ Collated □ Two-Sided	
3	 Pages:	All     From: 1 to: 1	4
	Paper Size:	A4 \$20.99 by 29.70 cm	
	Orientation:		
	-	TextEdit	
		Print header and footer	
		Cancel Print	

# 1) Copies

This sets the number of printed copies.

#### 2) Collated

Select this check box for sort-printing (1, 2, 3... 1, 2, 3...)

#### 3) Pages

This sets the range of pages to be printed.

- All Select this to print all pages.
- From/to Select this to specify the pages to be printed. Enter the page range in the From and to box.

#### 4) Two-Sided

This sets two-sided printing. When you select this check box, [Long-Edge binding] is automatically selected in the [Two-Sided] box in the Layout menu. This is selectable only for Mac OS X 10.5.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x.

# Layout

In the Layout menu, you can set N-up printing (multiple pages per sheet).

	Printer:	157.69.73.25	0		•			
	Presets: (	Standard			•			
	Copies:	1	Collated [		led			
	Pages:	All From: 1	to:	1				
	Paper Size: (	A4	\$	20.99 by 29	.70 cm			
	Orientation:	1 <u>i</u> 1»						
	(	Layout			\$			
1	Page	s per Sheet:	1		\$			
2	Layou	t Direction:	z 5	H	₽ <b>J</b>			
3		- Border: [t	None		\$			
4		Two-Sided:	Off		\$			
			] Reverse p ] Flip horiz	oage orient zontally	tation —			5
		L					_	6
				Cance		Print		

#### 1) Pages per Sheet

This sets the number of multiple pages printed on one sheet. The pages are reduced to fit the selected paper size automatically and are printed.

- <u>1</u> Select this if you do not wish to enable N-up printing.
- 2 Select this to print images from 2 pages arranged on one sheet.
- **4**—Select this to print images from 4 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 6 Select this to print images from 6 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 9 Select this to print images from 9 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 16 Select this to print images from 16 pages arranged on one sheet.

#### 2) Layout Direction

This sets how pages are arranged on one sheet. This is available only when N-up printing (printing multiple pages on one sheet) is set.

- <u>Across Left to Right Before Down</u> Pages arranged horizontally from left to right and then top to bottom on one sheet.
- Across Right to Left Before Down Pages arranged horizontally from right to left and then top to bottom on one sheet.
- Down Before Across Left to Right Pages arranged vertically from top to down and then left to right on one sheet.
- Down Before Across Right to Left Pages arranged vertically from top to down and then right to left on one sheet.

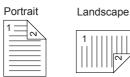
#### 3) Border

Select if a border line is to be drawn on each page.

- None Select this if no border line is to be drawn.
- Single Hairline Select this to draw a single hairline for the border.
- Single Thin Line Select this to draw a single thin line for the border.
- Double Hairline Select this to draw a double hairline for the border.
- Double Thin Line Select this to draw a double thin line for the border.

#### 4) Two-Sided

- This sets whether or not you want to print on both sides of the paper.
- Off Select this when you do not want to print on both sides of the paper.
- Long-Edge binding Select this to bind along the long edge side of the paper. The direction to be printed on the back side of the paper differs depending on the orientation.



Short-Edge binding — Select this to bind along the short edge side of the paper. The direction to be printed on the back side of the paper differs depending on the orientation.

Portrait Landscape



#### 5) Reverse page orientation

This sets the paper exit orientation. When the orientation of the paper is reversed with this setting, the top of the paper comes to the control panel side. This is selectable only for Mac OS X 10.5.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x.

#### 6) Flip horizontally

Select this check box to perform mirror printing of a page. This check box is displayed only for the Mac OS X 10.6.x to 10.7.x.

# Output Options

In the Output Options menu, you can save a print job as a file.

#### Note

This menu is displayed only for Mac OS X 10.3.x.

	Standard	•
(	Output Options	
Save as File	Format PDF	* *

#### 1) Save as File

Select this check box to save a print job as a file. When this box is selected, select the file type at the [Format] box.

#### 2) Format

This sets the format of a file to be saved.

- PDF Select this to save a print job as a PDF file.
- **PostScript** Select this to save a print job as a PS file.

# **Scheduler**

In the Scheduler menu, you can set when a print job will be sent to the equipment.

	Printer:	157.69.73.25	0			
	Printer.	157.09.75.25	0			
	Presets:	Standard			\$	
	Copies:	1	Collated	🗌 Two-Si	ded	
	Pages:	All From: 1	to:	1	]	
	Paper Size:	A4	\$	20.99 by 2	9.70 cm	
	Orientation:					
		Scheduler			\$	
1 —	Prin	t Document: 🧕	Now			
			) At ) On hold	17:31	(*)	
2 —		Priority:	Medium	\$		
				Canc	el Prir	nt

#### 1) Print Document

This sets when a print job will be sent to the equipment.

- Now Select this to send a print job now.
- At Select this to specify the time to send a print job. Set the time to send the print job. The print job will be held in the queue on Mac OS X until the specified time or until you resume the print job to be sent from the queue on Mac OS X.
- **On hold** Select this to hold a print job in the queue on Mac OS X. When you select this, the print job will be held in the queue on Mac OS X until you resume the print job to be sent from the queue on Mac OS X.

#### 2) Priority

Select the priority of a print job. If there are many print jobs, printing is performed from the job with the highest priority. Four levels of priority are available: [Urgent], [High], [Medium] and [Low].

# Paper Handling

In the Paper Handling menu, you can set Reverse page order printing and Odd or Even numbered page printing. The screens in the Paper Handling menu vary between Mac OS X 10.3.x and Mac OS X 10.4.x.

## Mac OS X 10.3.x

Prese	ets: Standard
	Paper Handling
Reverse pa	ge order Print:  All pages Odd numbered pages Even numbered pages

#### 1) Reverse page order

Select this check box when you want to print a document beginning with the last page.

#### 2) Print

Select whether all pages will be printed or only odd or even pages will be printed.

# Mac OS X 10.4.x

	Paper Handling		•
Page Order:	Automatic     Normal     Reverse	-	ages numbered pages numbered page
Destination P	aper Size:		
🖲 Use doc	uments paper size:	US Letter	
	fit paper size: e down only	US Letter	*

#### 1) Page Order

Mac OS X 10.5.x

Select the page order for printing.

#### 2) Print

Select whether to print all pages or only odd/even-numbered pages.

#### 3) Destination Paper Size

Select the output paper size.

- Use documents paper size Select this to print on the same-sized paper as the document size.
- Scale to fit paper size Select this to perform enlarge/reduce printing. Selected, select the output paper size in the box. If you do not want to enlarge the document images when a larger paper size is selected, select the [Scale down only] check box.

Presets:	Standard	•	
	Paper Hand	lling 🛟 -	
Pag	es To Print:	All pages	\$
Destination	Paper Size:	Suggested Paper: A4	÷.
		Scale to fit paper size Scale down only	
	Page Order:	Automatic	\$

## 1) Pages to Print

Select whether all pages will be printed or only odd/even-numbered pages will be printed.

#### 2) Destination Paper Size

Select the output paper size. The paper size selected in the [Page Setup] dialog box appears as a default setting.
 Scale to fit paper size — Select this check box to perform enlarge/reduce printing. When this is selected, select the output paper size in the box. If you do not want to enlarge the document images when a larger paper size is selected, select the [Scale down only] check box.

#### 3) Page Order

Select the page order for printing.

# Mac OS X 10.6.x to 10.7.x

.57.69.73.2		
tandard		¢
	Collated 🗌 Two-	Sided
All		
From: 1	to: 1	
4	🗧 20.99 by	29.70 cm
<b>i</b> 1.		
aper Handli	ing	\$
es to Print:	All pages	÷
age Order:	Automatic	\$
	Scale to fit paper	size
aper Size:	Suggested Paper: /	44 <b>‡</b>
	Scale down only	
	All From: 1 44 aper Handli es to Print: age Order:	Collated Two- All From: 1 to: 1 4 20.99 by 20.99 by 20.99 by 1 aper Handling as to Print: All pages age Order: Automatic Scale to fit paper taper Size: Suggested Paper: A

#### 1) Pages to Print

Select whether all pages will be printed or only odd or even pages will be printed.

#### 2) Page Order

Select the page order for printing.

## 3) Destination Paper Size

Select the output paper size. The paper size selected in the [Page Setup] dialog box appears as a default setting.
 Scale to fit paper size — Select this check box to perform enlarge/reduce printing. When this is selected, select the output paper size in the box. If you do not want to enlarge the document images when a larger paper size is selected, select the [Scale down only] check box.

# ColorSync

In the ColorSync menu you can adjust colors on the printouts.

#### Note

This menu is displayed only for Mac OS X 10.3.x to Mac OS X 10.4.x.

Presets:	Standard	•
	ColorSync	•
Color Con	version: Standard	•
Quart	z Filter: None	•

#### 1) Color Conversion

- Select the method for color management.
- Standard Select this if you want the application you are using to control the color management of the printouts.
- In Printer Select this if you want the printer you are using to control the color management of the printouts.

#### 2) Quartz Filter

Select the presence of the Quartz Filter.

# **Color Matching**

In the Color Matching menu you can adjust the colors on the printouts.

# Note

This menu is displayed only for Mac OS X 10.5.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x.

	Printe	er: 157.69.73.250	\$		
	Prese	s: Standard	\$		
	Copie	s: 1 Collated	Two-Sided		
	Page	s: • All From: 1 to:	1		
	Paper Siz	e: 🗛 🛟	20.99 by 29.70 c	m	
	Orientatio	n: 1			
		Color Matching	\$		
1	•	ColorSync 🔘 In printer -			- 2
3	Profile: A	utomatic	\$		
	P	rofile Unknown			
			Cancel	Print	

# 1) ColorSync

Select this if you want the application you are using to control the color management of the printouts.

#### 2) In Printer

Select this if you want the printer you are using to control the color management of the printouts.

#### 3) Profile

Select a color profile to be applied if you selected [ColorSync].

# Cover Page

In the Cover Page menu, you can set whether to send a print job with a banner page. The banner page includes information about the job owner, job name, application name, date and time, and printer name.

Printer: 157.69.73.250
Presets: Standard
Copies: 📘 🗹 Collated 🗌 Two-Sided
Pages: • All From: 1 to: 1
Paper Size: A4 20.99 by 29.70 cm
Orientation:
Cover Page
 Print Cover Page: 💽 None
<ul> <li>Before document</li> <li>After document</li> </ul>
Cover Page Type: standard
Billing Info:

#### 1) Print Cover Page

You can set how to insert a banner page.

- None Select this to print without a banner page.
- Before document Select this to print a banner page before the document.
- After document Select this to print a banner page after the document.
- 2) Cover Page Type

Select the type of the cover page.

#### 3) Billing Info

Enter the billing information to have it appear on the banner page.

# Note

Due to Mac OS limitations, text input into the [Billing Info] box will only be displayed up to the length of the field.

# **Error Handling**

#### Note

This menu is displayed only for Mac OS X 10.3.x to Mac OS X 10.4.x.

In the Error Handling menu, you can set how to report a PostScript error.

PostScript Errors
No special reporting
O Print detailed report
Fray Switching
O Use printer's default
<ul> <li>Switch to another cassette with the same paper size</li> <li>Display alert</li> </ul>

#### 1) PostScript Errors

This sets whether to print a PostScript error report.

- No special reporting Select this if you do not want to print PostScript error information.
- Print detailed report Select this to print PostScript error information.

#### 2) Tray Switching

This is not supported by this equipment.

# Paper Feed

In the Paper Feed menu, you can set the paper source.

Presets:	Standard		\$	
Copies:	1	Collated 🗌	Two-Sided	
Pages:	💽 All 🔄			
	O From: 1	to: 1		
Paper Size:	A4	\$ 20	.99 by 29.70	cm
	12 13	1		
Orientation:	T i T>			
- 20	Paper Feed		\$	
~	ages From: (	Auto Select		\$
😶 All p				
	Page From:	Auto (Default		A Y

#### 1) All pages from

Select this when you want to use the same paper source for all pages. When this is selected, select the paper source or paper type to be used at the box.

#### 2) First Page From

Select this when you want to specify different paper sources for the first page and remaining pages. When this is selected, specify the paper source or paper type to be used for the first page at the box.

#### 3) Remaining From

Select the paper source or paper type to be used for remaining pages in the box. This can be selected only when you choose the [First Page From] option button.

# **Color Settings**

In the Color Settings 1 and Color Settings 2 menus, you can adjust the color settings for printing.

# Note

This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system.

# **Color Settings 1**

	Printer: (	157.69.73.250	
	Presets: (	Standard	•
	Copies: Pages:		led
	Paper Size:		70 cm
	Orientation:		
	(	Color Settings 1	•
1	 Color Type:	Color	\$
~	Halftone:	Auto	•
2	Hantone.		•
3		. 🗌 Toner Save	
4	 Image Type:	General	•
5	 Black Overprint:	Text and Graphics	\$
6		PostScript Overprint	
Ŭ			_
7	 Pure Black and Gray:	Black and Gray - Auto	•
8	 Resolution:	600 dpi	•
			Cancel Print

Color Setting	js 1 (Mac OS )	X 10.3.x)	
	Printer:		
	Presets:	Standard	
		Color Settings 1	
1	- Color Type :	Color	
8 —	- Resolution :	600 dpi	•
2	- Halftone :	Auto	•
9 —	– 🗹 Distinguish Thin	Lines :	
3 —	- 🗌 Toner Save :		
4	- Image Type :	General	
5 —	- Black Over Print :	Text and Graphics	•
7	- Pure Black and Gray	Black and Gray - Auto	•
(?)	PDF  Prev	iew Cancel	Print

# **Color Settings 2**

	Printer: 157.69	.73.250		
	Presets: Standa	rd		\$
	Copies: 1 Pages: • All	Col	llated 🗌 Two-Sic	led
	O From	1	to: 1	
	Paper Size: A4		20.99 by 29	.70 cm
	Orientation:	•		
	Color S	ettings 2	1	•
10	Color Balance			
	Cyan:	0	Magenta:	0
	5 8 8 8 <b>1</b> 5	1 1 1	1 1 1 1 V	1 1 1
	Yellow:	0	Black:	0
	3 1 1 1 1 1 1 1	1.1.1		1 1 1 1
11 ———	Image Attribute			
	Use Sharpness	Filter		
	Sharpness:	0	Brightness:	0
		n na n	Y	F (F (F) F)
	Contrast:	0	Saturation:	0
		1 1 1	1 1 1 1 V	1 1 1 1
	Background Adjust	ment: 0		
	1 1 1 1	1 1 1		
			Cance	el Print

## 1) Color Type

This sets whether to print a job in the color mode or the black mode.

- Auto Select this to determine the color mode automatically. When a print job is a black and white document, the
  system automatically prints the document in the black mode. When a print job is a color document, it prints the
  document in the color mode.
- **Color** Select this to print a document in the color mode.
- Mono Select this to print a document in the black mode.
- Black and Red Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with red. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are printed in red.
- Black and Green Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with green. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are printed in green.
- Black and Blue Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with blue. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are printed in blue.
- **Black and Cyan** Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with cyan. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are printed in cyan.
- Black and Magenta Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with magenta. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are printed in magenta.
- Black and Yellow Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with yellow. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are printed in yellow.
- Black and White Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with white. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are not printed.

## 2) Halftone

This sets how halftones are printed.

- Auto Select this to print with proper halftone automatically depending on the contents in the document.
- **Detail** Select this to print halftone in detail.
- Smooth Select this to print halftone smoothly.

#### 3) Toner Save

Select this check box to print in the save mode.

# 4) Image Type

This sets how colors are printed by selecting the job type. The printer driver automatically applies the proper image quality to the selected job type.

- General Select this when printing a general color document.
- Photo Select this when printing photos.
- Presentation Select this when printing a vivid document.
- Line Art Select this when printing a document that contains a lot of characters or line art.
- Advanced Color Settings Select this to apply a profile which can adjust the color space. For details, see the following page:
  - P.138 "Advanced Color Settings"

## 5) Black Overprint

This set when to print background content that has black text overlaid on it. If this is enabled, the gap between the text and the background is minimized and color deviation is prevented.

- Off Select this so as not to print the background of the black content.
- Text Select this to print all the full-color background and then the black text on a color background.
- <u>Text and Graphics</u> Select this to print all the full-color background and then the black text and graphics on a color background.

## 6) PostScript Overprint

Select this to overprint an object that has been set so on an application.

# Note

This option is selectable only when [Color] is selected in the [Color Type] box in the Color Settings 1 menu.

#### 7) Pure Black and Gray

- Select whether to print the black and gray scale contents in a document using black toner.
- Off Select this to print the document in the color mode.
- Black Auto Select this to automatically select areas to be printed using black toner when you want to print the black contents using its toner. When this option is selected, the appropriate areas are printed using black toner according to the Image Type option.
- Black Text Select this to print the black text using black toner.
- Black Text and Graphic Select this to print the black text and graphics using black toner.
- Black Text, Graphic and Image Select this to print the black text, graphics and images using black toner.
- Black and Gray Auto Select this to automatically select areas to be printed using black toner when you want to print the black and gray scale contents using its toner. When this option is selected, appropriate areas are printed using black toner according to the Image Type option.
- Black and Gray Text Select this to print the black and gray scale text using black toner.
- Black and Gray Text and Graphic Select this to print the black and gray scale text and graphics using black toner.
- Black and Gray Text, Graphic and Image Select this to print the black and gray scale text, graphics, and images using black toner.

#### 8) Resolution 600 dpi (Fixed)

#### 9) Distinguish Thin Lines

Select this check box to print thin lines clearly. This check box is displayed only for Mac OS X 10.3.x.

#### 10) Color Balance

Adjusts the density of each color for printing. You can set from -4 to 4.

## Note

This option is selectable only when [Auto], [Color], or [Black and Red / Green / Blue / Cyan / Magenta / Yellow / White] is selected in the [Color Type] box in the Color Settings 1 menu.

#### 11) Image Attribute

- This sets the sharpness, brightness, contrast, saturation and background adjustment for printing.
- Sharpness
  - Adjusts the sharpness for printing. You can set from -4 (softest) to 4 (sharpest) by moving the scroll bar when the [Use Sharpness Filter] check box is selected.
- Brightness
- Adjusts the brightness for printing. You can set from -4 (darkest) to 4 (lightest) by moving the scroll bar. - Contrast
- Adjusts the contrast for printing. You can set from -4 (lowest) to 4 (highest) by moving the scroll bar. - Saturation
- Adjusts the saturation for printing. You can set from -4 (low clear) to 4 (high clear) by moving the scroll bar. - Background Adjustment
- Adjusts the density level of the background. You can set from -4 (lightest) to 4 (darkest) by moving the scroll bar.

# **Advanced Color Settings**

The Advanced Color Settings menu is displayed when [Advanced Color Settings] is selected for the [Image Type] option in the Color Settings 1 menu.

#### Notes

- This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system.
- The Advanced Color Settings menu is displayed when Mac OS X 10.4 to 10.7.x is used.

#### Tip

Advanced Color Settings can be set from the TopAccess menu. For detailed instructions on how to set Advanced Color Settings from the TopAccess menu, refer to the **TopAccess Guide**.

Pi	inter: 157.69.73.250
Pr	esets: Standard
C	opies: 1 🗹 Collated 🗌 Two-Sided
F	Pages: 💿 All
	From: 1 to: 1
Paper	Size: A4 20.99 by 29.70 cm
Orient	ation:
	Color Settings 1
Source profiles	
RGB:	SourceRGB_v10
СМҮК:	SourceCMYK_v10
	Apply to Device Color only
Destination pro	ofiles
СМҮК:	OutputCMYK_v10
Rendering Inte	nt
O Percept	
🔘 Saturati	O Absolute Colorimetric
Revert to	defaults
Use these	cattings
Use these	settings
	Can

#### 1) RGB Source profiles

This selects RGB source profile. When you obtained color profile data from this equipment, its RGB source profile data appear.

# 2) CMYK Source profiles

This selects CMYK source profile. When you obtained color profile data from this equipment, its CMYK source profile data appear.

## 3) Apply to Device Color only

Select this check box when you give priority to color profiles embedded in the image.

#### 4) Destination profiles

This selects destination profile. When you obtained color profile data from this equipment, its destination profile data appear.

#### 5) Rendering Intent

- This selects an image processing method for color space conversion when you print.
- Perceptual This is recommended for photo images.
- **<u>Relative colorimetric</u>** More original colors can be retained than those when you select [Perceptual].
- **Saturation** This is recommended when the vividness of colors is more important than their correct reproduction. It is useful for graphic charts.
- Absolute colorimetric Original colors can be retained even on colored paper.

#### 6) [Revert to defaults]

Click this to return the Advanced Color Settings to the defaults.

#### 7) [Use these settings]

Click this to save the color profile data set for this equipment and return to the Color Settings 1 menu.

# **Print Mode**

In the Print Mode menu, you can set the way this equipment handles the print job. This menu allows you to enable various job types such as Private Print, Proof Print and Hold Print.

	Printer: 157.69.73.250
	Presets: Standard
	Copies: 1 🗹 Collated 🗌 Two-Sided Pages: 💿 All
	From:         1         to:         1           Paper Size:         A4         20.99 by 29.70 cm
	Orientation:
	Print Mode
1	 Department Code
2	 Normal 00000
3	 Distinguish Thin Lines - Disabled
4	 Do not Print Blank Pages - Disabled
	Cancel Print

#### 1) Department Code

Select whether the entry of a department code is required or not for printing. Select this check box to enable this option if this equipment is managed under department codes. When you do this, enter a department code in the box on the right. For your department code, ask the administrator.

#### Tips

- For Mac OS X 10.3.x, enter the department code in a 5-digit number.
- For Mac OS X 10.4.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x, enter the department code using up to 63 characters.
- A department code must consist of one-byte characters such as numbers from 0 to 9, letters of the alphabet from A to Z (in both capital and small ones), a hyphen (-), an underscore (\_), and a period (.).

## 2) Print Mode

This sets the type of print job.

- Normal Select this to print a job normally.
- Proof Select this to print the first copy of a multicopy job and then wait for approval before printing the remaining copies. If a print job is sent as a proof job, one copy of the job is printed and the remaining copies are saved in the proof job queue on this equipment, which are not printed until you activate printing from the touch panel display. This option allows you to check the job's output before printing the remaining copies and thereby reduce paper waste.
- Private Select this to print a private job. When this is selected, specify the 5-digit password in the field next to
  the box. The print job is saved in the private job queue on this equipment, and not printed until you activate printing
  from the touch panel display of this equipment. This option is useful when you want to print a confidential document
  secured with a password. The user has to enter the password to print the private job when activating printing from
  the touch panel display.
- Hold Select this option to print a hold job. The print job, sent as a hold job, is saved in the hold job queue on this
  equipment. To perform printing, select the desired job on the touch panel display and press [PRINT]. This option is
  useful to prevent you from forgetting to remove printed sheets.

## 3) Distinguish Thin Lines

Select this check box to print thin lines clearly. This check box is displayed only for Mac OS X 10.4.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x.

## 4) Do not Print Blank Pages

Select whether you require blank pages to be printed.

## Notes

- When more than 2 is selected at the [Page per Sheet] option in the Layout menu, the blank pages will be printed.
- Pages with a header or footer will be printed even if the content is blank.

# Printer Features

In the Printer Features menu, you can set special printing features.

## Finishing

In the Finishing menu, you can set the destination, hole punching and stapling.

		Standard	\$
	Copies:		-Sided
	Pages: (	All     From: 1     to: 1	
	Paper Size:	A4 \$20.99 b	y 29.70 cm
	Orientation:		
-	(	Printer Features	+
		Feature Sets: Finishing	\$
_	Destinatio	n: Printer's Default 🛟	
	Hole Puncl	h: Off	\$
_	Stapling:	Off	\$
	Folding	]	

#### 1) Destination

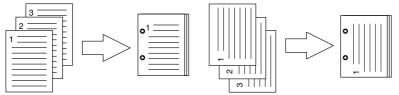
This selects the destination tray.

- Printer's Default Select this to set the output to the default tray (that is set as such for raw jobs in the Printer setting page of TopAccess Administrator's page).
- Exit Tray Select this to set the output to the exit tray of this equipment.
- Upper Exit Tray Select this to set the output to the upper exit tray of this equipment.
- Side Exit Tray Select this to set the output to the side exit tray of this equipment.
- Job Separator Upper Select this to route the upper exit tray of the Job Separator (optional).
   Job Separator Lower Select this to route the lower exit tray of the Job Separator (optional).
- **Tray 1** Select this to set the output to the upper tray of the Finisher (optional).
- Tray 2 Select this to set the output to the lower tray of the Finisher (optional).

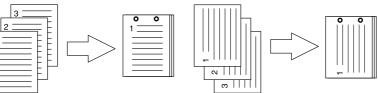
#### Notes

- Destinations selectable differ depending on the model and the option configuration.
- Depending on the type of Finisher (optional) installed and destination settings, stapling and hole punching may not be performed.
- · Depending on the equipment settings, the paper may be delivered to a tray that cannot carry out stapling or hole punching when [Printer's Default] is selected as the [Destination] option.
- [Tray 1] and [Tray 2] can be selected when the Finisher (optional) or Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) are installed.
- [Side Exit Tray] can be selected only when neither of the Finisher (optional) and the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed.

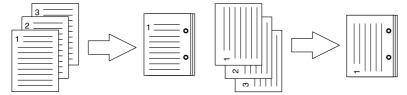
- 2) Hole Punch
  - This sets whether or not a print job is hole punched.
  - <u>Off</u> Select this to print without hole punches.
  - Long Edge Punch without rotation Select this to create holes on the left side for a portrait document, or on the top for a landscape document.



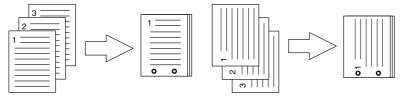
- Short Edge Punch without rotation — Select this to create holes on the top for a portrait document, or on the right for a landscape document.



- Long Edge Punch with 180 degree rotation — Select this to create holes on the right side for a portrait document, or on the bottom for a landscape document.



 Short Edge Punch with 180 degree rotation — Select this to create holes on the bottom for a portrait document, or on the left for a landscape document.

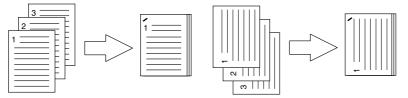


Note

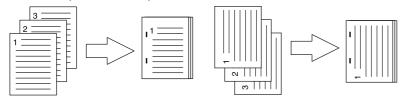
This option cannot be selected if a Hole Punch Unit (optional) is not installed.

## 3) Stapling

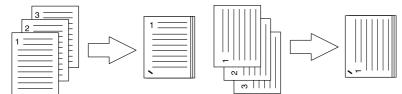
- This sets whether a print job is stapled.
- <u>Off</u> Select this to print without stapling.
- Upper Left (Portrait) / Upper Right (Landscape) Select this to staple on the upper left for a portrait document, or on the upper right for a landscape document.



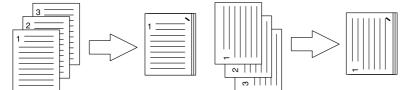
 Middle Left (Portrait) / Middle Top (Landscape) — Select this to double-staple on the left for a portrait document, or on the top for a landscape document.



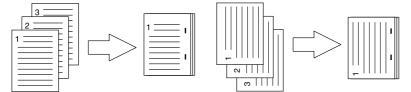
- Lower Left (Portrait) / Upper Left (Landscape) — Select this to staple on the lower left for a portrait document, or on the upper left for a landscape document.



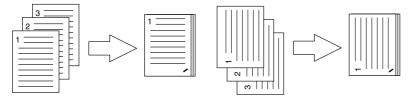
- **Upper Right (Portrait) / Lower Right (Landscape)** — Select this to staple on the upper right for a portrait document, or on the lower right for a landscape document.



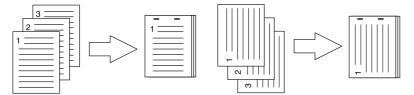
 Middle Right (Portrait) / Middle Bottom (Landscape) — Select this to double-staple on the right for a portrait document, or on the bottom for a landscape document.



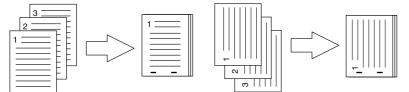
- Lower Right (Portrait) / Lower Left (Landscape) — Select this to staple on the lower right for a portrait document, or on the lower left for a landscape document.



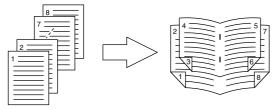
- Middle Top (Portrait) / Middle Right (Landscape) — Select this to double-staple on the top for a portrait document, or on the right for a landscape document.



Middle Bottom (Portrait) / Middle Left (Landscape) — Select this to double-staple on the bottom for a portrait
document, or on the left for a landscape document.



 Saddle Stitch (Portrait) / Saddle Stitch (Landscape) — Select this to double-staple in the center for a booklet to be printed. Select this only when booklet printing is performed.

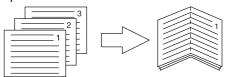


### Notes

- This option cannot be selected if a Finisher (optional) is not installed.
- [Saddle Stitch (Portrait) / Saddle Stitch (Landscape)] can be selected only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed.

### 4) Folding

Select this check box to have paper folded at its center when it exits after data are printed according to the set print options.



### Note

The Folding option is available only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed in either the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP, or the Saddle Stitch Finisher MJ-1106 (optional) is installed in the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP.

### Booklet

In the Booklet menu, you can set booklet printing.

Presets:	Standard
Copies:	1 Collated 🗌 Two-Sided
Pages:	
Paper Size:	C From: 1 to: 1
Orientation:	
	Printer Features
	Feature Sets: Booklet
Booklet	Paper Size: None (Off)
🗹 Left t	o Right Page Layout
Booklet	Centre Margin: 0 points 🛟
	Outer Margin: 0 points 🛟

### 1) Booklet Paper Size

Select a paper size for the booklet. Both sides of a sheet are printed as two pages. The booklet size will be half the size of the paper size that you specify.

### 2) Left to Right Page Layout

Select this check box to create a booklet that can be read from left to right.

### 3) Booklet Center Margin

Select the width of the margin added to the center.

### 4) Booklet Outer Margin

Select the width of the margin added to the short edge side of a sheet.

### **Cover Pages**

In the Cover Pages menu, you can set Front Cover printing and Back Cover printing.

### Note

This option menu cannot be set when the Cover Page option for sending a print job with a banner page is enabled.

Presets: Standard	\$
Copies: 1 🗹 Collated 🗌 Two-Si	ded
Pages: 🖲 All O From: 1 to: 1	1
Paper Size: A4 20.99 by 2	9.70 cm
Orientation:	
Printer Features	\$
Feature Sets: Cover Pages	
Use Front Cover	
Source: Auto (Default)	
Print Style: Do not print on page	
Use Back Cover	
Source: Auto (Default)	
Print Style: Do not print on page	

### 1) Use Front Cover

This sets front cover printing which allows you to insert or print a cover on a sheet fed from a different drawer or the bypass tray.

To enable cover printing, select this check box and select the location from where a cover sheet is to be fed and the print style to be used.

### Source

Select from where the cover sheet is to be fed. When [Auto (Default)] is selected, the paper is automatically selected according to the printed document size.

### Note

The selectable values in the [Source] box vary depending on the optional devices installed on this equipment and their configuration on the Paper Feed menu.

### **Print Style**

This selects how to print the cover.

- **Do not print on page** Select this to insert a blank cover.
- Print on page Select this to print the first page image on the front side of a cover. When the Two-Sided Printing
  option is enabled in the Layout menu, the first two page images are printed on both sides of a cover.
- **Print on 1 side of the page** Select this to print the first page image on the front side of a cover. This is available only when the Two-Sided Printing option is enabled in the Layout menu.

### 2) Use Back Cover

This sets back cover printing which allows you to insert or print a back cover on a sheet fed from a different drawer or the bypass tray.

To enable back cover printing, select this check box and select the location from where a back cover sheet is to be fed and the print style to be used.

### Source

Select from where the cover sheet is to be fed. When [Auto (Default)] is selected, the paper is automatically selected according to the printed document size.

### Note

The selectable values in the [Source] box vary depending on the optional devices installed on this equipment and their configuration on the Paper Feed menu.

### **Print Style**

- This selects how you want to print a back cover.
- Do not print on page Select this to insert a blank back cover.
- **Print on page** Select this to print the last page image on the front side of a back cover. When the Two-Sided Printing option is enabled in the Layout menu, the last two page images are printed on both sides of a back cover.
- **Print on 1 side of the page** Select this to print the last page image on the front side of a back cover. This is available only when the Two-Sided Printing option is enabled in the Layout menu.

### Quality

In the Quality menu, you can specify various image quality features.

### Note

This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital system.

	Printer: 157.69.73.250
	Presets: Standard
	Copies: 1 Collated Two-Sided Pages: All From: 1 to: 1
	Paper Size: A4 20.99 by 29.70 cm Orientation: Printer Features Feature Sets: Quality
2 —— 3 ——	Halftone: Auto
	Cancel

### 1) Halftone

This sets how to print halftones.

- Auto Select this to print with proper halftone depending on the contents in the document automatically.
- **Detail** Select this to print halftone in detail.
- Smooth Select this to print halftone smoothly.
- 2) Smoothing

Select this check box to print texts and graphics smoothly.

3) Toner Save

Select this check box to print in the toner save mode.

### Note

When the toner save mode is enabled, printing may become light.

### e-Filing

In the e-Filing menu, you can send and store print jobs from your application to e-Filing on this equipment (hard disk). The jobs stored to e-Filing can then be printed using the touch panel. You can select either a public or user box in which to store print jobs. You can also specify a folder in which the print jobs are to be stored in these boxes. The public box is shared by all users who can view the jobs stored in this box. User boxes are ones that users can create as desired. Access to user boxes can be restricted with a password.

### Note

The e-Filing menu is displayed when the Plug-in file is installed in Mac OS X 10.4.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x. For instructions on how to install the Plug-in file, refer to the **Software Installation Guide**.

	Printer: 157.69.73.250	•
	Presets: Standard	\$
	Copies: 🚺 🗹 Collated 🗌 Two-Sid	ed
	Pages:  All From: 1 to: 1	
	Paper Size: A4 20.99 by 29.	70 cm
	Orientation:	
	e-Filing	•
1	 Store this document to e-Filing	
2	 Print the document	
-	-	
3	 Destination	
	Q Search	
	🚇 Public Box	0
	🙆 001 – User01	
	002 – User02	
	003 – User03	
	🙆 004 – User04	
	🔒 005 – User05	4
	006 – User06	- v
	L@_007_U07	
	5-digit password:	
	Destination folder:	
	Cance	Print
	Cance	

### 1) Store this document to e-Filing

To store a print job in e-Filing, select this check box.

### 2) Print the document

If you want to print the job as well as saving it to a box, select this check box.

### 3) Destination

Select either the public box or a user box in which to store print jobs.

### 5-digit password

If a password is set in the user box, enter the 5-digit password.

### **Destination folder**

When you specify a folder in which the print job is to be stored in a public or a user box, enter the folder name.

Notes

- · Enter the folder name within 64 characters.
- If the number of folders has reached 100, you cannot create any more.

# U Watermark

In the watermark menu, you can overprint the document with useful information, such as [Confidential], [Draft], [Proof] and [Top Secret]. You can choose from several predefined watermarks or you can create and save your own custom watermarks. Watermarks consist of text only.

### Note

The watermark menu is displayed when the Plug-in file is installed in Mac OS X 10.4.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x. For instructions on how to install the Plug-in file, refer to the **Software Installation Guide**.

	Printer: 157.69.73.250	
	Presets: Standard	
	Copies: 📘 🗹 Collated 🗌 Two-Sided	
	Pages: 📀 All O From: 1 to: 1	
	Paper Size: A4 20.99 by 29.70 cm	
	Orientation:	
	Watermark	
1 —	Tayt:	
2 —	Font: Helvetica	
3 —	Size: 50 pt 🗘	- 8
4 ——	Angle: 0° C	
5 ——	Color: Black	
6 —	O Print over the document	
7 —	Print over the document (298 pt, 421 pt)	
	Cancel	

### 1) Text

Select the watermark. You can create a new watermark if there is none you want to apply on the box.

### Note

You can enter up to 63 alphanumeric characters. If too many characters are entered, the watermark may not be printed correctly.

### 2) Font

Select the font to be used for the watermark text.

3) Size

Enter the font size for the watermark text.

The font size can be set from 6 to 300 pt in units of 1 pt. You can also set the font size by moving the scroll bar.

4) Angle

Enter the degree of the angle for rotating the watermark text. The angle can be set from 0 to 360 degrees in units of 1 degree. You can also set the degree of the angle by moving the scroll bar.

5) Color

Select the color of the watermark text.

### Note

When [Mono] is selected at the [Color Type] box in the Color Settings 1, the documents are printed with a shading of gray instead of the selected color.

### 6) Print over the document

Select this to print the watermark text placed above everything.

### 7) Print under the document

Select this to print the watermark text placed below everything.

### 8) Position

Adjust the position of the watermark by moving the scroll bars.

# □ Supply Levels

In the Supply Levels menu, the remaining toner and paper can be checked. This menu is displayed when Mac OS X 10.4 to 10.7.x is used.

	(		
Presets:	Standard	\$	
Copies:	1 Collated	Two-Sided	
Pages:	• All		
	O From: 1 to:	1	
Paper Size:	A4 🛟	20.99 by 29.70 cm	
Orientation:			
	Supply Levels	\$	
	Black (K)		
	Cyan (C)		
	Magenta (M)		
	Yellow (Y)		
	Waste Toner Ok		
Dr	awer 1 (A4 Plain)		
Draw	ver 2 (B4-R Plain)		
	er 3 (A3-R Plain)		
Dr	awer 4 (B5 Plain)		
	Supply levels shown are a	pproximate.	

# **U** Summary

In the Summary menu, you can confirm the current settings for printing.

Presets:	Standard
Copies:	1 Collated 🗌 Two-Sided
Pages	all
ruges.	O From: 1 to: 1
Paper Size:	A4 20.99 by 29.70 cm
Orientation:	
	Summary
Setting	Value
Copies & Pages	
► TextEdit	
⊦ Layout	
Color Matching	
Paper Handling	
Paper Feed	
⊢Cover Page ⊳Scheduler	
▶Scheduler ▶Print Mode	
▶ Print Mode ▶ Color Settings 1	
Color Settings 2	
e-Filing	
Watermark	
• Watermark • Printer Features	

# Print dialog on Mac OS X 10.2.x

The [Print] dialog boxes can be displayed by selecting the [Print] command from the [File] menu of the application.

Tip

The [Print] dialog boxes are different between Mac OS X 10.2.x and Mac OS X 10.3.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x. Please see the following section for the descriptions of the [Print] dialog box for Mac OS X 10.3.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x. P.125 "Print dialog on Mac OS X 10.3.x to Mac OS X 10.7.x"

### Note

The [Print] dialog boxes vary across applications.

# Copies & Pages

In the Copies & Pages menu, you can set the general print options such as number of copies and sort printing.

Presets: Standa	rd		;	
Copies & Pages 🔷 –				
Copies: 1	<b></b>	ollated		
Pages: 💽 All				
O Fre	om: 1	to: 1		

1) Copies

This sets the number of printed copies.

### 2) Collated

Select this check box for sort printing (1, 2, 3... 1, 2, 3...)

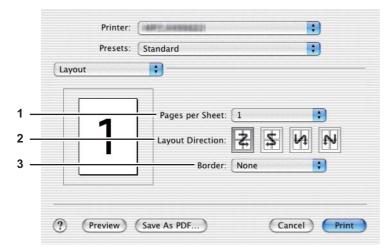
3) Pages

This sets the pages to be printed.

- <u>All</u> Select this to print all pages.
- From/to Select this to specify the pages to be printed. Enter the page range in the From and to box.

# Layout

In the Layout menu, you can set N-up printing (multiple pages per sheets). The items in the Layout menu vary depending on the Mac OS X version.



### 1) Pages per Sheet

This sets the number of multiple pages to be printed on one sheet. The pages are reduced to fit the selected paper size automatically and are printed.

- <u>1</u> Select this if you do not wish to perform N-up printing.
- 2 Select this to print images from 2 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 4 Select this to print images from 4 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 6 Select this to print images from 6 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 9 Select this to print images from 9 pages arranged on one sheet.
- 16 Select this to print images from 16 pages arranged on one sheet.

### 2) Layout Direction

This sets how pages are arranged on one sheet. This is available only when the N-up printing (printing multiple sheets on a page) is set.

- Across Left to Right Before Down Pages are arranged horizontally from left to right and then top to bottom on one sheet.
- Across Right to Left Before Down Pages are arranged horizontally from right to left and then top to bottom on one sheet.
- Down Before Across Left to Right Pages are arranged vertically from top to bottom and then left to right on one sheet.
- Down Before Across Right to Left Pages are arranged vertically from top to bottom and then right to left on one sheet.

### 3) Border

Select if a border line is to be drawn on each page.

- None Select this if no border line is to be drawn.
- Single hairline Select this to draw a single hairline for the border.
- Single thin line Select this to draw a single thin line for the border.
- Double hairline Select this to draw a double hairline for the border.
- Double thin line Select this to draw a double thin line for the border.

# Duplex

In the Duplex menu, you can set Two-Sided printing (printing on both sides of a sheet).

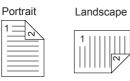


### 1) Print on Both Sides

Select this check box to print on both sides of the paper. When this box is selected, select the binding direction at the [Binding] option.

### 2) Binding

- This sets the type of binding for Two-sided printed pages.
- Long-Edge Binding Select this to bind along the long edge side of paper. The direction to be printed on the back side of the paper differs depending on the orientation.

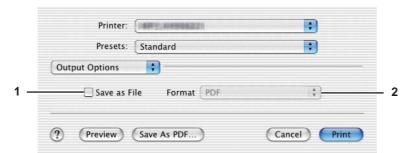


- **Short-Edge Binding** — Select this to bind along the short edge side of paper. The direction to be printed on the back side of the paper differs depending on the orientation.

Portrait	Landscape

# **Output Options**

In the Output Options menu, you can save a print job as a file.



### 1) Save as File

Select this check box to save a print job as a file. When this box is selected, select the file type at the [Format] box.

### 2) Format

- This sets the format to save a file.
- **<u>PDF</u>** Select this to save a print job as a PDF file.
- PostScript Select this to save a print job as a PS file.

# **Error Handling**

In the Error Handling menu, you can set how to report a PostScript error.

Error Handling	;	
PostScript Er	rors	
💽 No spe	cial reporting	
O Print de	etailed report	
Tray Switchin	ng	
🔘 Use pri	nter's default	
	to another cassette with the sar	ne paper size
Oisplay	/ alert	

### 1) PostScript Errors

This sets whether to print a PostScript error report.

- No special reporting Select this if you do not want to print PostScript error information.
- Print detailed report Select this to print PostScript error information.
- 2) Tray Switching

This is not supported by this equipment.

# Paper Feed

In the Paper Feed menu, you can select the paper source or media type.

Paper Feed		
• All pages from:	Auto Select	;
First page from:	Auto (Default)	*
Remaining from:	Auto (Default)	*)

### 1) All pages from

Select the option button when you want to use the same paper source for all pages. When this is selected, specify the paper source or paper type to be used at the box.

### 2) First page from

Select the option button when you want to specify a different paper source for a first page and remaining pages. When this is selected, specify the paper source or paper type to be used for a first page at the box.

### 3) Remaining from

Select the paper source or paper type to be used for the remaining pages in the box. This can be selected only when you choose the option button of the [First page from] option.

# **Printer Features**

In the Printer Features menu, you can set special printing features.

- P.154 "Booklet"
- P.155 "Color Settings 1"
- P.156 "Color Settings 2"
- P.157 "Color Settings 3"
- P.158 "Color Settings 4 5"
- P.159 "Color Settings 4 6"
- P.159 "Finishing"
- P.163 "Printing Modes"P.164 "Printing Modes DC"
- P.165 "Private Document Password"
- P.166 "Quality"



Do not use the Cover Pages menu.

### **Booklet**

In the Booklet menu, you can set booklet printing.

Printer Features	•	
Feature	Sets: Booklet	;
Booklet Paper	Size: None (Off)	
— 🗹 Left to Rigi	nt Page Layout	
Booklet Centre	Margin: 0 points	
Booklet Outer	Margin: 0 points 🛟	

### 1) Booklet Paper Size

Select a paper size for the booklet. Both sides of a sheet are printed as two pages. The booklet size will be the half size of the paper size that you specify.

### 2) Left to Right Page Layout

Select this check box to create a booklet that can be read from left to right.

3) Booklet Center Margin

Select the width of space added to the center.

### 4) Booklet Outer Margin

Select the width of space added to the short edge side of a sheet.

### **Color Settings 1**

In the Color Settings 1, you can set special features for printing.

### Note

This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system.

nter Features	
Feature Sets: Color Settings 1	\$
- Color Type: Color	
- Resolution: 600 dpi	
- Halftone: 🚺 📫	
- 🗹 Distinguish Thin Lines	

### 1) Color Type

This sets whether to print a job in the color mode or black mode.

- Auto Select this to determine the color mode automatically. When a print job is a black and white document, the
  system automatically prints the document in the black mode. When a print job is a color document, it prints the
  document in color mode.
- <u>Color</u> Select this to print a document in the color mode.
- Mono Select this to print a document in the black mode.
- Black and Red Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with red. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are printed in red.
- Black and Green Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with green. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are printed in green.
- Black and Blue Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with blue. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are printed in blue.
- **Black and Cyan** Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with cyan. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are printed in cyan.
- Black and Magenta Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with magenta. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are printed in magenta.
- Black and Yellow Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with yellow. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are printed in yellow.
- Black and White Select this to print a document in the twin color mode with white. When this is selected, the black parts of the document are printed in black and the color parts of the document are not printed.

### 2) Resolution

### 600 dpi (Fixed)

### 3) Halftone

This sets how to print halftones.

- Auto Select this to print with proper halftone depending on the contents in the document automatically.
- Detail Select this to print halftone in detail.
- Smooth Select this to print halftone smoothly.

### 4) Distinguish Thin Lines

Select this check box to print thin lines clearly.

### **Color Settings 2**

In the Color Settings 2, you can set image quality for printing.

### Note

This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system.

Printer Featur	res 🛟	
Fea	ture Sets: Color Settings 2	;
Image T	ype: General 🛟	
Black Ov	erprint: Text and Graphics	
PostS	cript Overprint	
Pure Bla	ck and Gray: Black and Gray - Auto	;

### 1) Image Type

This sets how colors are printed by selecting the job type. The printer driver automatically applies proper image quality for selected job type.

- General Select this when printing a general color document.
- Photo Select this when printing photos.
- Presentation Select this when printing a vivid document.
- Line Art Select this when printing a document containing a lot of characters or line art.

### Note

Other than [General] cannot be selected when [Mono] is selected at the [Color Type] box in the Color Settings 1 menu.

### 2) Black Overprint

This set when printing background content that has black text overlaid on it. If this is enabled, the gap between the text and the background is minimized and color deviation is prevented.

- Off— Select this so as not to print the background of the black content.
- Text Select this to print all the full-color background and then print the black text on a color background.
- <u>Text and Graphics</u> Select this to print all the full-color background and then print the black text and graphics on a color background.

### 3) PostScript Overprint

Select this to overprint an object that has been set so on an application.

### Note

This option is selectable only when [Color] is selected in the [Color Type] box in the Color Settings 1 menu.

### 4) Pure Black and Gray

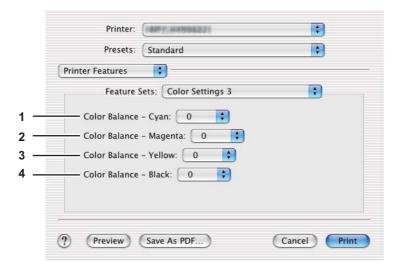
- Select whether to print the black and gray scale contents in a document using black toner.
- Off Select this to print the document in the color mode.
- Black Auto Select this to automatically select areas to be printed using black toner when you want to print the black contents using its toner. When this option is selected, appropriate areas are printed using black toner according to the Image Type option.
- Black Text Select this to print the black text using black toner.
- Black Text and Graphic Select this to print the black text and graphics using black toner.
- Black Text, Graphic and Image Select this to print the black text, graphics and images using black toner.
- <u>Black and Gray Auto</u> Select this to automatically select areas to be printed using black toner when you want to print the black and gray scale contents using its toner. When this option is selected, appropriate areas are printed using black toner according to the Image Type option.
- Black and Gray Text Select this to print the black and gray scale text using black toner.
- Black and Gray Text and Graphic Select this to print the black and gray scale text and graphics using black toner.
- Black and Gray Text, Graphic and Image Select this to print the black and gray scale text, graphics, and images using black toner.

### **Color Settings 3**

In the Color Settings 3, you can set color balance for printing.

### Note

This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system.



1) Color Balance - Cyan

Adjusts the density of cyan for printing. You can set from -4 to 4.

- 2) Color Balance Magenta Adjusts the density of magenta for printing. You can set from -4 to 4.
- Color Balance Yellow Adjusts the density of yellow for printing. You can set from -4 to 4.
- 4) Color Balance Black Adjusts the density of black for printing. You can set from -4 to 4.

### **Color Settings 4 5**

In the Color Settings 4 5, you can set image attributes for printing.

### Note

This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system.

Presets: Standard	•
rinter Features	
Feature Sets: Color Settings 4 5	;
— 🗌 Use Sharpness Filter	
— Contrast: 0	
— Sharpness: 0 🛟	
— Brightness: 0	
— Saturation: 0	

### 1) Use Sharpness Filter

Select this check box when you use a sharpness filter.

### 2) Contrast

Adjusts the contrast for printing. You can set from -4 (lowest) to 4 (highest).

### 3) Sharpness

Adjusts the sharpness for printing. You can set from -4 (softest) to 4 (sharpest) by moving the scroll bar when the [Use Sharpness Filter] check box is selected.

### 4) Brightness

Adjusts the brightness for printing. You can set from -4 (darkest) to 4 (lightest).

### 5) Saturation

Adjusts the saturation for printing. You can set from -4 (low clear) to 4 (high clear).

### **Color Settings 4 6**

In the Color Settings 4 6, you can set image attributes for printing.

### Note

This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital color system.

Printer Features	•
Feature Sets: Color Settings 4 6	•
Background Adjustment: 0	

### 1) Background Adjustment

Adjusts the density level of the background. You can set from -4 (lightest) to 4 (darkest).

### Finishing

In the Finishing menu, you can set the destination, hole punching and stapling.

Printer Features	•	
Feature Se	ets: Finishing	+
Destination:	Printer's Default	
Hole Punch:	Off	+
Stapling: Off		\$
- 🖂 Folding		

### 1) Destination

- This selects the destination tray.
- <u>Printer's Default</u> Select this to route the output to the default tray (that is set as the default tray for raw jobs in the Printer setting page of the TopAccess Administrator's page).
- **Exit Tray** Select this to set the output to the exit tray of this equipment.
- Upper Exit Tray Select this to set the output to the upper exit tray of this equipment.
- Side Exit Tray Select this to set the output to the side exit tray of this equipment.
- Job Separator Upper Select this to route the upper exit tray of the Job Separator (optional).
- Job Separator Lower Select this to route the lower exit tray of the Job Separator (optional).
- Tray 1 Select this to set the output to the upper tray of the Finisher (optional).
- Tray 2 Select this to set the output to the lower tray of the Finisher (optional).

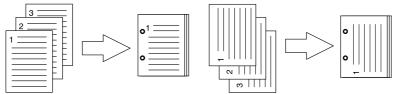
### Notes

- Destinations selectable differ depending on the model and the option configuration.
- Depending on the type of Finisher (optional) installed and destination settings, stapling and hole punching may not be performed.
- Depending on the equipment settings, the paper may be delivered to a tray that cannot carry out stapling or hole punching when [Printer's Default] is selected as the [Destination] option.
- [Tray 1] and [Tray 2] can be enabled when the Finisher (optional) or Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed.
- [Side Exit Tray] can be enabled only when neither of the Finisher (optional) and the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed.

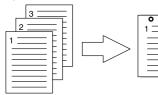
### 2) Hole Punch

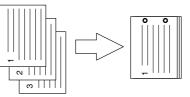
This sets whether or not a print job is hole punched.

- <u>Off</u> Select this to print without hole punches.
- Long Edge Punch without rotation Select this to create holes on the left side for a portrait document, or on the top for a landscape document.

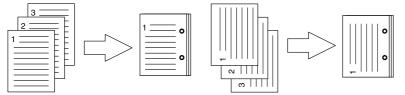


- **Short Edge Punch without rotation** — Select this to create holes on the top for a portrait document, or on the right for a landscape document.

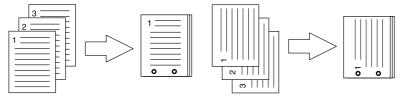




 Long Edge Punch with 180 degree rotation — Select this to create holes on the right side for a portrait document, or on the bottom for a landscape document.



 Short Edge Punch with 180 degree rotation — Select this to create holes on the bottom for a portrait document, or on the left for a landscape document.



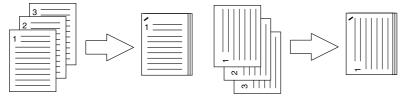
### Note

This option cannot be selected if a Hole Punch Unit (optional) is not installed.

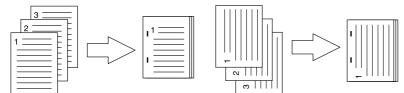
### 3) Stapling

This option sets whether a print job is stapled.

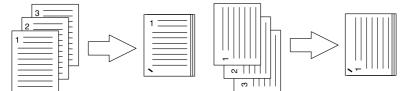
- **<u>Off</u>** Select this to print without stapling.
- **Upper Left (Portrait) / Upper Right (Landscape)** Select this to staple on the upper left for a portrait document, or on the upper right for a landscape document.



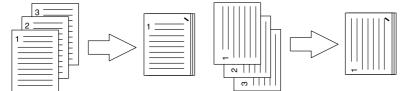
- Middle Left (Portrait) / Middle Top (Landscape) — Select this to double-staple in the left for a portrait document, or on the top for a landscape document.



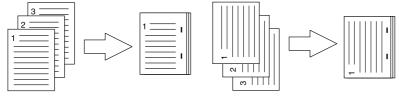
 Lower Left (Portrait) / Upper Left (Landscape) — Select this to staple on the lower left for a portrait document, or on the upper left for a landscape document.



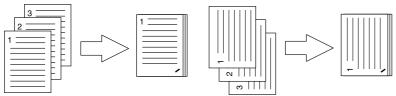
 Upper Right (Portrait) / Lower Right (Landscape) — Select this to staple on the upper right for a portrait document, or on the lower right for a landscape document.



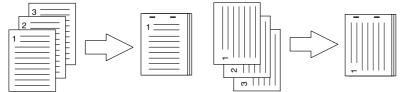
 Middle Right (Portrait) / Middle Bottom (Landscape) — Select this to double-staple on the right for a portrait document, or on the bottom for a landscape document.



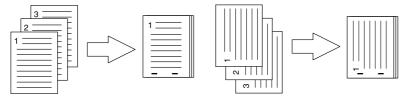
- Lower Right (Portrait) / Lower Left (Landscape) — Select this to staple on the lower right for a portrait document, or on the lower left for a landscape document.



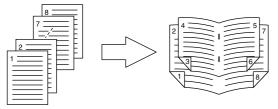
- **Middle Top (Portrait) / Middle Right (Landscape)** — Select this to double-staple on the top for a portrait document, or on the right for a landscape document.



- Middle Bottom (Portrait) / Middle Left (Landscape) — Select this to double-staple on the bottom for a portrait document, or on the left for a landscape document.



- Saddle Stitch (Portrait) / Saddle Stitch (Landscape) — Select this to double-staple on the center for a booklet to be printed. Select this only when booklet printing is performed.

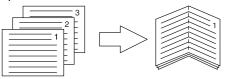


### Notes

- This option cannot be enabled if a Finisher (optional) is not installed.
- [Saddle Stitch (Portrait) / Saddle Stitch (Landscape)] can be selected only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed.

### 4) Folding

Select this check box to have paper folded at its center when it exits after data are printed according to the set print options.

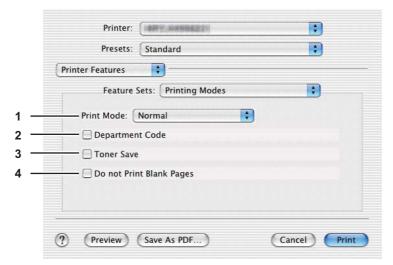


### Note

The Folding option is available only when the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is installed in either the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP, or the Saddle Stitch Finisher MJ-1106 (optional) is installed in the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP.

### **Printing Modes**

In the Printing Modes menu, you can set the way this equipment handles the print job. This menu allows you to enable various job types such as Private Print and Proof Print.



### 1) Print Mode

- This sets the type of print job.
- Normal Select this to print a job normally.
- Hold Select this option to print a hold job. The print job, sent as a hold job, is saved in the hold job queue on this
  equipment. To perform printing, select the desired job on the touch panel display and press [PRINT]. This option is
  useful to prevent you forgetting to remove printed sheets.

For detailed instructions on how to use the touch panel display, see the following page:

Proof — Select this option to print the first copy of a multicopy job and then wait for approval before printing the
remaining copies. If a print job is sent as a proof job, one copy of the job is printed and the remaining copies are
saved in the proof job queue on this equipment, which are not printed until you activate printing from the touch
panel display. This option allows you to check a job's output before printing the remaining copies and thereby
reduce paper waste.

For detailed instructions on how to use the touch panel display, see the following page:

Private - Password — Select this to print a private job. When this is selected, specify the 5-digit password in the Private Document Password menu. The print job is saved in the private job queue on this equipment, and not printed until you activate printing from the touch panel display of this equipment. This option is useful when you want to print a confidential document secured with a password. The user has to enter the password to print the private job when activating printing from the touch panel display.

### 2) Department Code

Select this check box if a department code is required for printing. When this is enabled, specify the department code in the DC menu.

Enabling the department code depends on whether this equipment is managed with department codes or not. Please ask your administrator for your department code.

P.164 "Printing Modes DC"

### 3) Toner Save

Select this check box to print in the toner save mode.



When the toner save mode is enabled, printing may become light.

### 4) Do not Print Blank Pages

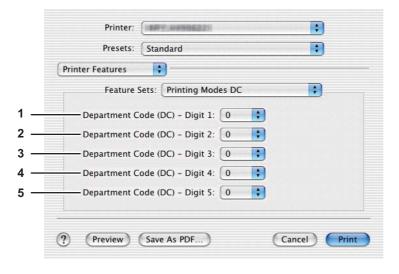
Select this check box to ignore blank pages for printing.

### Notes

- When more than 2 is selected at the [Page per Sheet] option in the Layout menu, the blank pages will be printed.
- The pages with header or footer will be printed even if the content is blank.

### **Printing Modes DC**

In the Printing Modes DC menu, you can specify your department code, if this equipment is so enabled. Before specifying the department code, you must check the Department Code option in the Printing Modes menu. Then specify the department code in this menu.



### Tip

How the equipment performs printing for an invalid department code print job, for which an invalid department code is specified, varies depending on the Invalid Department Code Print Job setting that can be set in the TopAccess Administrator mode and whether SNMP communication is enabled or not.

- When the Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Store to Invalid Job list], the invalid department code print job will be stored in invalid list without printing.
- When SNMP communication is disabled and Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Store to invalid job list], the invalid department code print job will be stored in the invalid department code print job list without printing.
- When the Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Print], the invalid department code print job will be printed.
- When the Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Delete], the invalid department code print job will be deleted.
- 1) Department Code (DC) Digit 1 Select the first digit of the department code.
- 2) Department Code (DC) Digit 2 Select the second digit of the department code.
- 3) Department Code (DC) Digit 3 Select the third digit of the department code.
- 4) Department Code (DC) Digit 4 Select the fourth digit of the department code.
- 5) Department Code (DC) Digit 5 Select the fifth digit of the department code.

### **Private Document Password**

In the Private Document Password menu, you can specify the Document ID number for the private job. It is recommended to specify the Private Document Password when you select to print a private job. If you do not specify the Private Document Password, the private job uses default Private Document Password "00000".

Printer Features		
Feature	Sets: Private Document Password	d 🛟
- Password - Di	git 1: 0 🛟	
- Password - D	git 2: 0	
- Password - D	git 3: 0 🛟	
- Password - D	igit 4: 0	
- Password - D	git 5: 0 🛟	

- 1) Password Digit 1 Select the first digit of the Document ID.
- 2) Password Digit 2 Select the second digit of the Document ID.
- Password Digit 3 Select the third digit of the Document ID.
- 4) Password Digit 4 Select the fourth digit of the Document ID.
- 5) Password Digit 5 Select the fifth digit of the Document ID.

### Quality

In the Quality menu, you can specify various image quality features.

### Note

This option is available only when your equipment is a multifunctional digital system.

Printer Featur	es 🗘	
Fea	ture Sets: Quality	\$
	Auto	
— 🗹 Smoo	thing	
- 🗌 Toner	Save	

### 1) Halftone

- This sets how to print halftones.
- Auto Select this to print with proper halftone depending on the contents in the document automatically.
- **Detail** Select this to print halftone in detail.
- Smooth Select this to print halftone smoothly.

### 2) Smoothing

Select this check box to print texts and graphics smoothly.

### 3) Toner Save

Select this check box to print in the toner save mode.



When the toner save mode is enabled, printing may become light.

# **U** Summary

In the Summary menu, you can confirm the current settings for printing.

Presets:	Standard	•	
ummary	•		
Output Options			-
Print to: Prin	nter		
Layout	ion: Joft Bight Ton Bottom		
Pages Per She	ion: Left-Right-Top-Bottom		- 1
Duplex			- 1
Print on Both	Sides: Off		- 1
Copies & Pages			- 1
Copies: 1, C			- 1
Page Range: Error Handling	All		- 1
	MonoMFP		4

# 4

# **PRINTING FROM UNIX/Linux**

This chapter provides the instructions on how to print from a UNIX/Linux workstation.

Printing From Application	
Considerations and limitations	
Printing using lp command	
Generic "Ip" and "Iptap" options	
General options	
PCL5e specific options	

# **Printing From Application**

This section describes how to print from a UNIX/Linux workstation.

### Notes

- When the User Management setting is enabled, a print job sent from UNIX/Linux workstations is processed as an
  invalid job according to the User Authentication Enforcement setting. For more information about the User
  Authentication Enforcement setting, refer to the *TopAccess Guide*.
- Before attempting to print from a UNIX/Linux workstation, make sure all the UNIX/Linux Filters are installed in your workstation.

Tip

For instructions on how to install or set CUPS, refer to the Software Installation Guide.

## Considerations and limitations

- This equipment acts only as a filter and not as a complete driver. The size and order of the printed pages cannot be modified.
- The UNIX/Linux filters do not support the following engine-supplied features:
  - Enlarge/Reduce printing
  - Rotate Sort
  - N-up printing
  - Watermarks
  - Cover Sheets
  - Sheet Insertion
  - Scheduled Print
  - Print to Overlay File
  - Store to e-Filing
  - Use Overlay Image
- · Linux uses the lptap command to send a file to this equipment.
  - Since lp is not supported in all versions of Linux, the lptap command should be used instead.
- AIX supports printing using the qdaemon. This can be invoked by the user with the commands lp, lpr or qprt. In order to use the filter, either lp or qprt should be used.

# Printing using lp command

Use the lp command (lptap in Linux) to send a file to this equipment for printing. This command specifies various printerspecific options using the -o option parameter on the command line. The lp command also sets other print options using various other parameters. Use the "man net\_estcolor" command to display the online document that describes the various options and parameters that can be set to configure printed output.

All the options are sent to this equipment at the start of a print job so, if the print file contains its own commands, they may override the lp options.

# Generic "Ip" and "Iptap" options

# **How to print files**

Enter the following "Ip" command to print files with the specified printer: Ip -d <queuename> <filename>

# Copies

The number of copies of a print job is specified using the "-n <value>" parameter with the "lp" command. The default value is determined by the "lp" command and it is always 1. The copies are always collated.

# **Title**

The title that is printed on the banner page can be specified using the "-t <title>" parameter with the "lp" command. The default value is determined by the "lp" command and it is often the name of the print file. If multiple files are printed using the same "lp" command the default title is set to the name of the first file by the "lp" command.

# General options

Options below apply to all print jobs of the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP/ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP.

### Notes

- Option commands are case sensitive and must be entered exactly as shown.
- Some printing functions may be disabled depending on the combinations of option commands because priority is given to the specifications of this equipment over option commands.

# Print Language

The "net\_estcolor" program needs to know what printer language is used in each of the files that it is printing so that it can issue the correct commands to select various options. The following options are valid for the print languages.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
auto		Each file to be printed is examined to see if it starts with the "%!" sequence. If it does, then it is assumed that it is a PostScript file, otherwise it assumes that it is a plain text or a PCL6 file.
pcl		The print file is always treated as a plain text or a PCL6 file.
postscript	ps	The file is always treated as a PostScript file.
raw		The file is treated as a fully formatted file that already contains all the necessary commands. The file is sent to the printer without any modifications. In this mode no other options are valid and a banner page is not printed.

All PCL5e jobs automatically send the "<esc>&k2G" command to convert the line-feed character into a carriage-return - line-feed sequence. If the PCL5e job contains some of its own escape sequences it may override this setting. The default print language is "auto".

Example: The command to specify that a file is PostScript is "lp -o ps <filename>".

# □ Stapling

This sets whether a print job is printed with staples. When the optional Finisher is installed it can be activated using the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
staple=0		Stapling is turned off.
staple=1		Staple in the top left corner of a portrait page and the upper right corner of a landscape page.
staple=2		Put two staples on the left side of a portrait page or the top side of a landscape page printed on long-edge-feed paper. This command has no effect when the paper is fed from the short-edge side.
staple=3		Staple in the bottom left corner of a portrait page and the upper left corner of a landscape page.
staple=4		Staple in the top right corner of a portrait page and the bottom right corner of a landscape page.
staple=5		Put 2 staples on the right side of a portrait page or the bottom side of a landscape page printed on long-edge- feed paper. This command has no effect when the paper is fed from the short-edge side.
staple=6		Staple in the bottom right corner of a portrait page and the lower left corner of a landscape page.
staple=7		Put 2 staples on the top side of a portrait page or the right side of a landscape page printed on short-edge-feed large format (A3/Ledger) paper. This command has no effect when the paper is fed from the long-edge side or small paper size.
staple=8		Put 2 staples on the bottom side of a portrait page or the left side of a landscape page printed on short-edge- feed large format (A3/Ledger) paper. This command has no effect when the paper is fed from the long-edge side or small paper size.
staple=9		Put 2 staples in the middle of a landscape page and fold the paper in half vertically along the staple line (saddle stitching). This command works in conjunction with booklet printing. This command has no effect when the paper is fed from the long-edge side.

If this option is not specified, the printer's default value will be used.

Example: The command to staple in the upper left corner of a long edge feed portrait page is "lp -o staple=1 *<filename>*". The value for the stapling position depends on the paper size, the paper feed direction, and the print direction. This function is not available for all paper sizes and the users should refer to the *Copying Guide* for a list of compatible paper sizes. In particular, A5, A6 and statement paper sizes will not work with this function.

### Note

Select [Tray 2] for stapling with the Finisher (optional) or the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional).

# Folding

This sets whether the Folding feature is enabled or not using the following options:

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
folding=off	OFF	Folding is disabled.
folding=on	ON	Folding is enabled.

If the Saddle Stitch Finisher (optional) is not installed or it is not specified, the default value of "folding=off" is used. Example: The command to enable the Folding feature is "lp -o folding=on *<filename>*".

# **Output Bin**

The output bin can be specified using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
inner		Select the inner tray.
bin1		Select the upper output tray of the Finisher (optional).
bin2		Select the lower output tray of the Finisher (optional).

If the Finisher (optional) is not installed on the equipment, the default output tray will be used (inner). If the Finisher (optional) is installed on the equipment, the default output tray will be used (bin2). Example: The command to specify output bin 1 is "Ip -o bin1 *<filename>*".

# □ Hole Punching

This sets whether a print job is printed with hole punches. When the hole punch option is installed it can be activated using the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
punch=0	nopunch	Hole punching is turned off.
punch=1		Hole punch on long edge without rotation.
punch=2		Hole punch on short edge without rotation.
punch=3		Hole punch on long edge with 180 degree rotation.
punch=4		Hole punch on short edge with 180 degree rotation.

If this option is not specified, the default value of "nopunch" will be used.

This function is not available for all paper sizes and the users should refer to the **Copying Guide** for a list of compatible paper sizes. In particular, A5, A6 and statement paper sizes will not work with this function.

Example: The command to hole punch the long edge feed portrait page is "Ip -o punch=1 <filename>".

# □ Media Type

The paper source can also be selected using the media type using the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
mtype=Plain		A paper source that contains Plain paper is requested.
mtype= Transparency		A paper source that contains transparency slides is requested.
mtype=Thick1		A paper source that contains Thick1 paper is requested.
mtype=Thick2		A paper source that contains Thick2 paper is requested.
mtype=Thick3		A paper source that contains Thick3 paper is requested.

In PostScript Deferred Media Selection is always turned on so the paper size has priority over the media type and the paper source.

In PCL5e the paper size always has priority over the media type and the paper source.

If this option is not specified, the default value will be used.

Example: The command to specify Thick1 media type is "lp -o mtype=Thick1 <filename>".

# □ Paper Source

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
auto-source		Select auto paper tray selection.
manual		Select Bypass Tray.
drawer1	upper cas1	Select the 1st drawer.
drawer2	lower cas2	Select the 2nd drawer.
drawer3	pedupper cas3	Select the 3rd drawer (optional).
drawer4	pedlower cas4	Select the 4th drawer (optional).
LCF	lcf	Select the Large Capacity Feeder (optional). The Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is not available for some countries or regions.

The paper source can be selected using the following options.

In PostScript Deferred Media Selection is always turned on so the paper size has priority over the paper source. In PCL5e the paper size always has priority over the paper source.

If this option is not specified the command will not be sent so the printer's default value will be used.

Example: The command to specify the Large Capacity Feeder (optional) paper source is "lp - o lcf <filename>".

### Note

The 3rd and 4th drawers are optional.

# Duplexing

The current duplex mode can be specified using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
simplex		Turn duplexing off.
duplex	lduplex duplex_long duplex=long hduplex	Turn duplexing on with long edge binding.
sduplex	duplex_short duplex=short vduplex	Turn duplexing on with short edge binding.

If this option is not specified, the default value "simplex" will be used.

It is not necessary to specify duplexing for Booklet Mode (sduplex). Setting duplexing separately can override the booklet mode setting for duplexing.

Example: The command to specify long edge duplexing is "lp -o duplex <filename>".

# Depart Size

The current paper size can be specified using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
letter	lt LT	Select Letter size paper.
A4	a4	Select A4 size paper.
legal	lg LG	Select Legal size paper.
statement	st ST	Select Statement size paper.
ledger	ld LD	Select Ledger size paper.
ledgerwide	ldwide LDWIDE	Select Ledger wide size paper.
folio	folio-japan	Select Folio size paper.
A3	a3	Select A3 size paper.
A3WIDE	a3wide	Select A3-Wide size paper.
A5	а5	Select A5 size paper.
A6	a6	Select A6 size paper.
B4	b4 b4-jis B4-JIS	Select JIS B4 size paper.
B5	b5 b5-jis B5-JIS	Select JIS B5 size paper.
computer	co CO	Select Computer size paper.
legal13	lg13 LG13	Select LG13inch size paper.
sq85	letter-square	Select SQ8.5inch size paper.
postcard		Select Postcard size paper.
8K	8k	Select 8K size paper.
16K	16k	Select 16K size paper.

If this option is not specified, the printer's default value will be used. Example: The command to specify the A4 paper size is "lp -o a4 *<filename>*".

# Printing Modes

The printing mode can be selected using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
normal		Process as a normal print job.
hold		Process as a hold print job.
proof		Process as a proof print job.
private=din		Process as a private print job. The din is up to a 63-digit (between 1 to 63) password.

If this option is not specified, the printer's default value will be used.

A private printing job requires the user to enter a maximum number of 63 character long string. Character lengths longer than 63 will be clipped to 63.

The following characters are invalid, but no type checking is carried out.

"&`();<>^`|~@#%\*!

# Department Code

The department code can be set using the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
dept=code		Set the department code. A department code within 63 characters comes in [code].

A department code is specified within 63 characters.

If the entered department code is longer than 63 characters, it is clipped to 63 characters when a job is sent. The following characters are invalid for department codes:

" & ' ( ) ; < > ^ ` | ~ @ # % \* !

### Note

Enther the department code in a 5-digit number.

Tips

- How the equipment performs printing for an invalid department code print job, for which an invalid department code is specified, varies depending on the Invalid Department Code Print Job setting that can be set in the TopAccess Administrator mode and whether SNMP communication is enabled or not.
  - When SNMP communication is enabled and Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Store to invalid job list], an error message will be displayed when an invalid department code is entered.
  - When SNMP communication is disabled and Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Store to invalid job list], the invalid department code print job will be stored in the invalid department code print job list without printing.
  - When the Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Print], the invalid department code print job will be printed.
  - When the Invalid Department Code Print Job is set to [Delete], the invalid department code print job will be deleted.
- For the appropriate department code, ask your system administrator.

# □ Smoothing

This sets whether to print text and graphics smoothly. This mode can be set using the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
smoothing=on	ON	Set the smoothing mode.
smoothing=off	OFF	Cancel the smoothing mode.

Example: The command to set the smoothing mode is "Ip -o smoothing=on <filename>".

Note

This option is available only when you have either the ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP.

# Distinguish Thin Lines

This sets whether to distinguish thin lines or not. This mode can be set using the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
thinlinelimit=on	ON	Set the thin line limit mode.
thinlinelimit=off	OFF	Cancel the thin line limit mode.

Example: The command to set the thin line limit mode is "lp -o thinlinelimit=on <filename>".

# Do Not Print Blank Pages

This sets whether or not a blank page is printed. This mode can be selected using the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
blankpage=0		Set the blank page mode (disable Do not Print Blank Pages).
blankpage=1		Cancel the blank page mode (enable Do not Print Blank Pages).

Example: The command to set the blank page mode is "lp -o blankpage=0 <filename>".

# Toner Save

The toner save mode can be set using the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
tonersave=on	ON	Set the toner save mode.
tonersave=off	OFF	Cancel the toner save mode.

Example: The command to set the toner save mode is "lp -o tonersave=on <filename>".

# Booklet Modes

The booklet mode can be selected using the following options.

### Note

The booklet mode applies only for the PostScript data. Performing the booklet printing using the PCL data is invalid.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
booklet=letter	lt LT	Select Letter size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet=A4	a4	Select A4 size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet=legal	lg LG	Select Legal size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet= statement	st ST	Select Statement size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet=ledger	ld LD	Select Ledger size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet=folio	folio-japan	Select Folio size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet=A3	a3	Select A3 size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet=A5	а5	Select A5 size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet=B4	b4 B4-JIS b4-jis	Select JIS B4 size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet=B5	b5 B5-JIS b5-jis	Select JIS B5 size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet= computer	co CO	Select Computer size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet=legal13	lg13 LG13	Select Legal-13 size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet=SQ85	sq85 letter-square	Select 8.5 inch square size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet=8K	8k	Select 8K size paper for the booklet printing mode.
booklet=16K	16k	Select 16K size paper for the booklet printing mode.

In a job, if this value is LT, and in PDL too the data are for LT paper size, this will result in a scaled booklet on Letter paper. In a job, if this value is A3, and in PDL the data are for A4 paper size, this will result in a tiled booklet on A3 paper. When the Booklet Mode options is selected, the paper size is automatically set to the same size as for Booklet Mode. This function is only available for A3, A4, B4, Letter and Ledger paper sizes.

If the booklet mode is selected, then duplexing is also selected automatically (sduplex). Setting duplexing separately can override the booklet mode setting for duplexing.

Example: The command to select Letter size paper for the booklet printing mode is "Ip -o booklet=letter <filename>".

# Deage Layout

The booklet mode page layout can be selected using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
left2right=off	OFF	Select right to left page layout for the booklet printing mode. This value decides the layout of the pages in the booklet. If this value is OFF then the layout of pages is Right to Left as shown in the figure below. $7 \frac{5}{66} \frac{4}{3} \frac{2}{3}$
left2right=on	ON	Select left to right page layout for the booklet printing mode. This is the default setting. If the value is ON then the layout of the pages is from Left to Right as shown in the figure below.

If left2right=off then long edge binding is selected, otherwise if left2right=on then short edge binding is used. Example: The command to select left to right page layout for the booklet printing mode is "lp -o left2right=on <*filename*>".

# Center Margin

The booklet mode center margin can be selected using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
centermargin =value		Select the center margin value for the booklet printing mode. This value specifies in pixels the Center Margin or the "Gutter". This is in addition to the center margin already specified by the application. The valid range for value is 0 - 300. Default is 0.

Example: The command to select the center margin value for the booklet printing mode is "Ip -o centermargin=value *<filename>*".

# Outer Margin

The booklet mode outer margin can be selected using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
outermargin =value		Select the outer margin value for the booklet printing mode. This value specifies in pixels the Outer Margin or the "Creep" per page, which should take place while printing a booklet. The valid range for value is 0 - 600. Default is 0.

Example: The command to select the outer margin value for the booklet printing mode is "Ip -o outermargin=value *<filename>*".

# Collate

The collate option can be selected using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
collate=off	OFF	Cancel the collate printing mode.
collate=on	ON	Set the collate printing mode.

f this option is not specified, the default value of "collate=on" will be used. Example: The command to select collate off is "lp -o collate=off *<filename>*".

# **Orientation**

The following orientation options are available.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
portrait		Print the document in portrait orientation.
landscape		Print the document in landscape orientation.

If this option is not specified the command will not be sent so the printer's default value will be used. Example: The command to specify landscape orientation is "lp -o landscape *<filename>*".

# Given Section For Forthern For

If the pitch is specified the net\_estcolor program will always select the Courier font; otherwise the default font is used. The following options are used to select the font pitch.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
с	pitch=16.67	Set the character pitch to 16.67 characters per inch.
10	pitch=10	Set the character pitch to 10 characters per inch.
12	pitch=12	Set the character pitch to 12 characters per inch.
pitch=value		Set the character pitch to value characters per inch.

In all the cases shown above the Courier font will also be selected. When the pitch is changed, the font size will automatically be scaled to the appropriate size.

If this option is not specified, the default pitch and font will be used.

Example: The command to specify 8 characters per inch is "lp -o pitch=8 <filename>".

# Page Length

The number of lines to print on a page can be specified with the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
pl=value		Set the lines per page to value.

As this equipment is a page printer we cannot change the physical length of a piece of paper so the actual effect of this command is to after the value for lines per inch so that the requested number of lines is printed on the page. The actual page length may differ from this value if the top margin or the text length option is used.

If this option is not specified the PJL command will not be sent so the printer's default value will be used. The minimum page length allowable is 5. If value is less than 5, the page length is set to 5.

The command to specify 66 lines per page is "lp -o pl=66 <filename>".

## Color Mode

This sets whether a print job is printed in color, mono, or twin color. The color mode for printing mode can be selected using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
colormode= COLOR	color	Set color mode printing for the print mode.
colormode= GRAYSCALE	grayscale	Set grayscale mode printing for the print mode.
colormode= AUTO	auto	Set auto color mode printing for the print mode.
colormode= 2KR	2kr	Set twin color mode (Black and Red) printing for the print mode.
colormode= 2KG	2kg	Set twin color mode (Black and Green) printing for the print mode.
colormode= 2KB	2kb	Set twin color mode (Black and Blue) printing for the print mode.
colormode= 2KC	2kc	Set twin color mode (Black and Cyan) printing for the print mode.
colormode= 2KM	2km	Set twin color mode (Black and Magenta) printing for the print mode.
colormode= 2KY	2ky	Set twin color mode (Black and Yellow) printing for the print mode.
colormode= 2KW	2kw	Set twin color mode (Black and White) printing for the print mode.

Example: The command to set the color mode for the print job is "Ip -o colormode=COLOR <filename>"

#### Note

This option is available only when you have either the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP.

## □ Pure Black and Pure Gray

This sets whether printing the black and gray scale contents in a document using the black toner. This mode can be selected using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
pureblackgray=0		Disable the black toner printing of the black and gray scale contents.
pureblackgray=1		Enable the black toner printing of the black contents.
pureblackgray=2		Enable the black toner printing of the black and gray scale contents.

Example: The command to set the pure black and pure gray mode for the print job is "lp -o pureblackgray=1 <filename>"

#### Note

This option is available only when you have either the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP.

## Image Quality Type

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
iqnormal		Set the proper image quality for printing a general color document.
iqphoto		Set the proper image quality for printing photos.
iqpresen		Set the proper image quality for printing a vivid document.
iqlineart		Set the proper image quality for printing a document containing a lot of characters or line art.

The Image Quality Type can be selected using the following options.

Example: The command to set the normal quality type for the print job is "Ip -o ignormal <filename>"

#### Note

This option is available only when you have either the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP.

## □ Halftone

This sets the appropriate processing on halftone images. The halftone can be selected using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
halftone=AUTO		Set the proper halftone depending on the contents in the document automatically.
halftone=DETAIL		Set the halftone in detail.
halftone= SMOOTH		Set the halftone smoothly.

Example: The command to set the auto halftone for the print job is "lp -o halftone=AUTO <filename>"

## Black Overprint

This sets whether to print background content that has black text overlaid on it. If this is enabled, the gap between the text and the background is minimized and color deviation is prevented. This mode can be selected using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
blackoverprint=0		Disable the black over print mode.
blackoverprint=1		Enable the black over print mode.

Example: The command to set the black overprint mode for the print job is "Ip -o blackoverprint=1 <filename>"

#### Note

This option is available only when you have either the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP.

## Color Balance

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
CBC=value		Specify the color density of cyan toner. You can specify the following values: -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4
CBM=value		Specify the color density of magenta toner. You can specify the following values: -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4
CBY=value		Specify the color density of yellow toner. You can specify the following values: -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4
CBK=value		Specify the color density of black toner. You can specify the following values: -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4

The Color Balance can be selected using the following options.

Example: The command to set "1" to the color balance for black toner for the print job is "lp -o CBK=1 <filename>"

#### Note

This option is available only when you have either the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP.

## □ Image Attributes

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
brightness=value		Specify the brightness. You can specify the following values: -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4
contrast=value		Specify the contrast. You can specify the following values: -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4
saturation=value		Specify the saturation. You can specify the following values: -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4
sharpness=value		Specify the sharpness. You can specify the following values: -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4
backgroundadjus tment=value		Specify the background adjustment. You can specify the following values: -4, -3, -2, -1, 0, 1, 2, 3, 4

The Image Attributes can be selected using the following options.

Example: The command to set "1" to the brightness for the print job is "lp -o brightness=1 <filename>"

#### Note

This option is available only when you have either the ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP/CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP.

#### PCL5e specific options

Some of the options only apply to plain text or PCL5e files.

## Text Wrapping

The following options control text wrapping when it reaches the right margin.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
wrap		Enable automatic text wrapping.
nowrap		Disable automatic text wrapping.

If this option is not specified, the command will not be sent so the printer's default value will be used. Example: The command to specify wrapping is "lp -o wrap *<filename>*".

## Left Margin

The left margin position can be specified with the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
Im=value		Set the left margin to value columns.

If the left margin is set to the right of the right margin it will be ignored. If this option is not specified, the command will not be sent so the printer's default value will be used. Example: The command to set the left margin to five columns is "Ip -o Im=5 *<filename>*".

## **Right Margin**

The right margin position can be specified with the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
rm=value		Set the right margin to value columns.

If the right margin is set to the left of the left margin, or if it is set to a position wider than the logical page, it will be ignored. The right margin is specified in columns from the left margin. A negative value will be ignored.

If this option is not specified, the command will not be sent so the printer's default value will be used.

Example: The command to set the right margin to fifty columns is "Ip -o rm=50 <filename>".

## □ Top Margin

The top margin position can be specified with the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
tm=value		Set the top margin to value lines.

If the top margin is set too high or too low, part of the text may not appear due to the printer's unprintable region. The top margin will be ignored if it is set to a value greater than the printer's logical page length. Setting this value may affect the number of lines specified using the page length option.

If this option is not specified, the command will not be sent so the printer's default value will be used.

Example: The command to set the top margin to ten lines is "lp -o tm=10 <filename>".

## Text Length

The text length can be specified using the following options.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
tl=value		Set the length to value lines.

If the text length is set too high, part of the text may not appear due to the printer's unprintable area. The text length will be ignored if it is set to a value greater than the printer's logical page length minus the top margin. The text length is specified in rows from the top margin. Setting this value may affect the number of lines specified using the page length option. If this option is not specified, the command will not be sent so the printer's default value will be used. Example: The command to set the text length to 40 lines is "Ip -o tI=40 *<filename>*".

## Banner Page

A banner page is automatically generated for each file in each job. The banner page is always sent as a PCL5e job, including the following items.

- · Name of the user who performed printing
- · Job ID number and workstation name from which the job was sent
- Job title (This can be specified using the "-t" option. The same title controlled by the "lp" command is normally applied to each job.)
- · Option specified when printing was performed
- Number of printed sheets
- · Name of the printer and its IP address
- Date and time

Only one copy of the banner page is printed for each file, even if a number of copies of the job are requested. The banner page is sent to the equipment as a separate sub-job so that it is never stapled to the document. The banner page is printed with the following settings.

- Copies = 1.
- Stapling off.
- Hole punching off.
- Orientation = portrait.
- Duplex off.
- Paper size as requested by the "-o" parameter or the printer's default value.
- The paper source and the media type for the banner page can be set to different values than the job's paper source and media type.
- Auto paper source selection or the requested banner page source or media type.
- Output bin as requested by the "-o" parameter or the printer default value.
- 6 lines per inch
- Auto-wrap on.
- Automatic carriage-return when a line-feed is sent.

#### Notes

- The banner page is designed to fit the paper bigger than Statement / A5. The banner page uses the default paper size if paper is set to:
  - Statement
  - A5
  - A6
  - B5
  - Postcard
- The default is that the banner page is printed before the job so that it is in the correct stacking order.
- When the language is set to "raw" the banner is always disabled.
- The paper source and the media type for the banner page can be set to values different than the job's paper source and media type. If a banner paper source is not specified then the auto source command is sent. If a banner media type is not specified, then no banner media type command is sent, so the printer's default value will be used.
- If the file being printed specifies the paper destination or the paper size internally, the banner page may printed to the wrong output or on an incorrect paper size.
- Hole punching cannot be applied to banner pages.

#### **Banner Options**

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
banner=last		Print the banner page after the job so that it will be physically on top of the job in the output tray.
banner=first	banner	Print the banner page before the job so that it will be physically under the job in the output tray.
nobanner	nb	Do not print a banner. The ability to specify the "nobanner" option can be disabled by the system administrator to force all jobs to print with a banner.

The banner page can be printed using the following options.

The default value for this option is that the banner page is printed first. Example: The command to printing the banner page after the job is "lp -o banner=last *<filename>*".

#### **Banner Paper Source**

The banner paper source can be specified using the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
bauto-source		Select the auto paper tray selection.
bdrawer1	bupper bcas1	Select the 1st drawer.
bdrawer2	blower bcas2	Select the 2nd drawer.
bdrawer3	bpedupper bcas3	Select the 3rd drawer (optional).
bdrawer4	bpedlower bcas4	Select the 4th drawer (optional).
blcf	BLCF	Select the Large Capacity Feeder (optional). The Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is not available for some countries or regions.

If the banner paper source is not specified the PCL5e auto paper source command "<esc>&I7H" will be sent. The banner page source cannot be set to manual feed. The paper size always has priority over the paper source. Example: The command to specify that the banner page paper source is the Large Capacity Feeder (optional) is "Ip -o blcf <*filename*>".

#### **Banner Media Type**

The banner page paper source can also be selected using the media type using the following option.

Option Value	Alternate Value	Description
bmtype=Plain		A paper source that contains Plain paper is requested.
bmtype= Transparency		A paper source that contains transparency slides is requested.
bmtype=Thick1		A paper source that contains Thick1 paper is requested.
bmtype=Thick2		A paper source that contains Thick2 paper is requested.
bmtype=Thick3		A paper source that contains Thick3 paper is requested.

The paper size always has priority over the media type and the paper source.

If this option is not specified, the command will not be sent so the printer's default value will be used to print the banner page.

The command to specify that the banner page should be printed on a media type is "lp -o bmtype=Plain1 <filename>".

# 5

# MANAGING PRINT JOBS FROM THE CONTROL PANEL

This chapter describes how to use the control panel to control the print jobs and monitor the equipment.

Monitoring the Print Job Status	
Normal Print / Scheduled Print jobs	
Proof Print jobs	
Private Print jobs	
Hold Print jobs	
Invalid jobs	
Printing files from USB media (USB Direct Printing)	
Viewing the Print Job Log	
Checking Supplies	
Viewing the drawer status	
Checking remaining toner levels	214

## Monitoring the Print Job Status

Your print jobs can be monitored on the equipment's touch panel. The types of print jobs you can monitor include Normal Print, Scheduled Print, Private Print, Hold Print and Proof Print. If the Department Management feature is enabled, the equipment can also display the Invalid jobs, which are held without being printed. You can view the status, as well as release, delete, pause/resume, and change the order of these jobs. Connecting a USB storage device to the equipment allows you to print PDF, encrypted PDF, XPS, JPEG, PRN and PS files contained in the media directly from the touch panel without using a client computer (USB Direct Printing).

#### Note

If the equipment is managed by the User Management feature, you need to enter the user information, such as the user name and password.

- P.186 "Normal Print / Scheduled Print jobs"
- P.191 "Proof Print jobs"
- P.194 "Private Print jobs"
- P.198 "Hold Print jobs"
- P.202 "Invalid jobs"
- P.205 "Printing files from USB media (USB Direct Printing)"

Tip

Only when the Fax received print function is enabled, will the following be possible. Hold Print jobs for faxes stored in the equipment after they have been received can be displayed in the list, which appears when you press the [PRINT] button on the control panel and then [HOLD (FAX)]. For details of the Fax received print function, contact your service technician.

#### Normal Print / Scheduled Print jobs

When you press [JOB STATUS] on the touch panel, the [JOBS] tab of the JOB STATUS screen appears. On the [JOBS] tab, Normal Print and Scheduled Print jobs are listed together with copy jobs. You can check the user name, date and time of registration, paper size, number of pages, number of copies, and current status of each job. You can also delete, pause or resume each job, and change the order of the jobs on the list.

When the Job Skip function is enabled, a job fails due to lack of paper or such is automatically skipped and the next job is processed. For instructions on how to set the Job Skip function, refer to the *MFP Management Guide*.

PRI	NT	FAX	SCAN				
	Use	r Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status
-) U	Jser01		10,13:16	A4	30	1	Printing
10	Jser02		10,1316	A4	30	1	Ready
-) U	Jser 03		10,14:03	A4	10	1	Ready
1	Jser04		10,14.03	A4	20	1	Ready
-) U	Jser05		10,14:02	A4	3	1	Scheduled
DELE	TE	PAUSE	MOVE	RECOVER		> PRIM	CLOSE

For the Scheduled Print jobs, "Scheduled" is indicated in the "Status" column.

Up to 1000 jobs can be listed. To display the previous or next page, press  $\land$  or  $\checkmark$ . The number of jobs displayed on a page may vary depending on the equipment used.

To exit from the JOB STATUS screen, press [CLOSE].

Tips

- On the [JOBS] tab, you can select the desired mode for monitoring the status by pressing [PRINT], [FAX], or [SCAN]. For details on the scan or Internet fax job status, refer to the *Scanning Guide*. For details on the fax job status, refer to the *GD-1250/GD-1260 Operator's Manual for FAX Unit* (optional).
- Besides the Job Skip function, this equipment prevents the process of a print job from being paused with some setting changes. When paper has run out during printing, for example, you can continue printing with Automatic Change of Paper Source (a function that feeds paper in the same size from another drawer when paper in the specified drawer has run out). Also when staples have run out or when the hole punch dust bin has become full, you can continue printing without stapling or hole punching. For the details, refer to the *MFP Management Guide*.

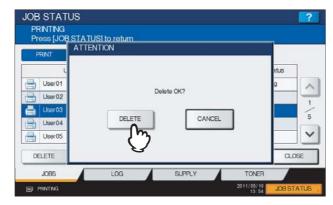
## Deleting jobs

Follow the procedure below when you want to delete unnecessary Normal Print / Scheduled Print jobs.

1 On the [JOBS] tab listing the print jobs (P.186), select the job that you want to delete, and then press [DELETE]. You can select more than one job.

PRINT	FAX	SCAN				
Us	er Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status
User01		10,13:06	A4	30	1	Printing
User02		10.1306	A4	30	1	Ready
User03		10,13.07	A4	30	1	Ready
Dater U4		10,13.07	M9	30	- k	невоу
User05		10,13.07	A4	30	1	Ready
DELETE	PAUSE		RECOVER	25	-	

**2** When "Delete OK?" appears, press [DELETE].



The selected job is deleted.

## □ Pausing/Resuming jobs

Jobs whose status is "Wait" can be held in the queue (Pausing).

#### Pausing jobs

On the [JOBS] tab listing the print jobs ( P.186), select the job that you want to pause and then press [PAUSE].



The selected job is paused. When a job is paused, the subsequent jobs on the list will be released earlier.

#### **Resuming paused jobs**

Select the job that you want to resume and then press [RESUME].

PRINT	FAX	SCAN				
Use	r Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status
User01		10,13.14	A4	30	1	Wait
User02		10 13 15	A4	30	1	Wait
User03		10,13.15	A4	30	1	Paused
USEL04		10,13.10	M9	30	- <u>1</u> .	wan
User05		10,13.16	A4	30	1	Wait
		10,1316	10000000	30	1	100000

#### Changing the job order

You can change the order of the jobs by moving them within the list.

#### Note

You can only move jobs from and to those whose status is "Wait".

1 On the [JOBS] tab listing the print jobs (III P.186), select the job that you want to move in the list, and then press [MOVE].

PRINT	FAX	SCAN				
Use	r Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status
User01		10.13.16	A4	30	1	Wait
User02		10,1316	A4	30	1	Wait
000000		10,13.30	/\+	10	- 1	wan
User04		10,1335	A4	15	1	Wait
User05		10,13.36	A4	10	1	Wait
DELETE	PAUSE	MOVE	RECOVE		> PRP	

If the target job is not displayed on the page, use  $\land$  and  $\bigtriangledown$  to change between pages.

#### **2** Specify the new position of the job. (The job will be moved under the job selected here.)

PRINT	FAX	SCAN				
U	ser Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status
User01		10,13.16	A4	30	1	Wait
User02		10,1316	A4	30	1	Wait
h User03		10.1335	A4	15	1	Wait .
User04		10,1335	A4	15	1	Wait
- UserUS		10,13.30	m.	10	1	wan
DELETE	PAUSE	MOVE	RECOVER		D PRIN	CLOSE



## Confirming the information of a skipped job

You can confirm the information of a job skipped by the Job Skip function.

- **1** On the [JOBS] tab listing the print jobs (III P.186), confirm the information of the skipped job.
  - 1) Select the skipped job.
  - 2) Press [RECOVERY INFORMATION].

PRINT	FAX	SCAN				
Use	r Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status
h User01		10.1209	A4	2	1	Scheduled
User02		10,1244	A5-R	5	ť	Skipped
			RECOVE			IT CLOSE

**2** Resolve the cause of the skip following the instructions on the screen.

a list below shows the au	spended job information
Cause	Unmatched paper size
Recovery condition	Select the Cassette or Bypass tray (1) Place paper of the displayed size and type on the bypass tray, (2) Press [CLOSE] to close this menu, and [PRINT] * If there is no such paper, clear the job and set another kind of paper.
PAPER SIZE	A5-R
PAPER TYPE	PLAN
DRAWER	BYPASS FEED

#### Note

If multiple causes exist, the second cause is displayed after you resolve the first one. Resolve all causes accordingly.

#### Proof Print jobs

Proof Print refers to the function to print only a single copy as a sample and suspend the rest of the job when you print multiple copies from a computer on the network.

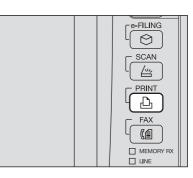
After viewing the first copy, you can decide, on the Proof Print job list, whether to print out the remaining copies or cancel the job to change the settings. If you select to print the remaining copies, you can change the number of copies to print. For detailed instructions on Proof Print, see the following page:

P.82 "Printing proof print jobs"

## Displaying the Proof Print job list

Follow the procedure below when you want to display the list of Proof Print jobs.

#### 1 On the control panel, press the [PRINT] button.



## 2 Select [PROOF].

🖶 PRINT	👷 TEMPLATE , ?
JOB TYPE PRIVATE PRIVATE User01 PROOF	
User02 HOLD (FAX) User03 User04	1/1
User05	
User06 ADMIN PASSWORD	OK OK
	2011/05/10 JOB STATUS

The Proof Print jobs are listed on the screen.

🚔 PRINT			\$	TEMPLA	NTE ,	?
JOB TYPE	PROOF					
	User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
User01		10,09:55	A4	2	1	
User02		10,09:56	A4	2	1	_
User03		10,09.56	A4	2	1	1
User04		10,10:01	A4	2	9	1
User05		10,10:03	A4	2	2	
User06		10,10.03	A4	2	5	$\sim$
DELETE	]	EDIT				RINT
			201	1/05/10	JOB ST/	TUS

## □ Printing remaining copies

Follow the procedure below if you have checked the first copy and want to print the remaining copies.

**1** On the Proof Print job list ( $\square$  P.191), select the job for printing.

🖶 PRINT	ī		*	TEMPLA	NTE ,	?
JOB TYPE	PROOF	×				
	User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
User01		10,09.55	A4	2	1	~
User02		10,09:56	A4	2	1	_
Liser03		10.0956	A 4	2	1	1
User04		10,10.01	A4	2	9	1
Userub		10,10.03	A4	2	2	
User06		10,10:03	A4	2	5	$\sim$
DELETE	]	EDIT ,			♦ P	RINT
			201	1/05/10 10:10	JOB ST/	ATUS

If the target job is not displayed on the screen, use  $\land$  and  $\checkmark$  to change between pages.

## Press [PRINT].

OB TYPE	PROOF	v					
	User Name		Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
User01			10,09:55	A4	2	1	
User02			10,09:56	A4	2	1	-
User03			10,09.56	A4	2	1	1
User04			10,10:01	A4	2	9	1
User05			10,10:03	A4	2	2	
User06			10,10:03	A4	2	5	~

The remaining copies are printed out.

The job in progress can be monitored on the [JOBS] tab listing the Normal Print jobs ( P.186).

#### Tip

To change the number of copies to print, press [EDIT] and enter the number of copies. Pressing [PRINT] starts the job.

		🚸 TEMPLATE 🔉	2
FILE NAME	: Document01.txt		
OWNER	: User04		
Pages	: 2		
Sets	9		
			- 1
	CA		
		10:11	

#### Deleting Proof Print jobs

Follow the procedure below to delete Proof Print jobs.

1 On the Proof Print job list (P.191), select the job that you want to delete, and then press [DELETE].

	moor	_				
OB TYPE	PROOF User Name	Date,Time	Danar	Pages	Sets	
	Oser Name	Date, I me	Paper		Sets	
User01		10,09:55	A4	2	1	~
User02		10,09:56	A4	2	1	-
User03		10.0956	Α4	2	1	1
User04		10,10.01	A4	2	9	1
USBIUS		10,10.03	A4	2	2	_
User06		10,10:03	A4	2	5	$\geq$
DELETE		EDIT			TO PR	

If the target job is not displayed on the screen, use  $\frown$  and  $\bigtriangledown$  to change between pages.

#### **2** When "Delete OK?" appears, press [DELETE].

🚔 PRINT	😭 TEMPL	ATE , ?
JOB TYPE User01 User02 User03 User04 User05 User06	Delete CANCEL	Sets 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 2 5 V
DELETE	EDIT	♦ PRINT
	2011/05/10 10:12	JOB STATUS

The selected job is deleted.

#### Private Print jobs

Private Print refers to the function to print a document from a computer on the network only when a set password is keyed in to the equipment's control panel. This function is useful when you want to print confidential documents and prevent them from being seen by others. Private Print jobs can be released or deleted from the Private Print job list. For detailed instructions on Private Print, see the following page:

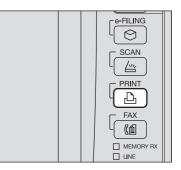
## Displaying the Private Print job list

Follow the procedure below to display the list of Private Print jobs.

#### 1 On the control panel, press the [PRINT] button.

#### Tip

If the Private print job list is not displayed, select [PRIVATE] from the box of the job types.



#### **9** On the Private Print job list, select the desired user name and then press [OK].

🖶 PRINT			🛧 TEMPLATE 🔎	?
JOB TYPE	PRIVATE	٣		
		User Name		
User01				~
User02				
User03				t_
User04				1
User05				
User06				Y
ADMIN. P.	ASSWORD		ок	
			2011/05/10 JOB S 09:20 JOB S	ን

#### Notes

- When you enter the nickname for [User name (Alias)] box on the [Others] tab on a Windows computer, and send the job to the equipment, its nickname will be displayed on the Private Print job list. If not, the user name that is entered to log in to your computer will be displayed on the Private Print job list.
- If you perform the operation as the administrator, press [ADMIN. PASSWORD] instead of selecting a user name. The on-screen keyboard appears, with which you can enter the 6-to-64-digit administrator password. In this case, the jobs can be deleted but are not allowed to be printed.

**3** Enter the password for the Private Print job, which has previously been set via the computer, and then press [OK].

2		٠						Ba	ck Spa	ce	Clea
		2	3	4 5	6	7	8	9	0	•	+
٩	w	E	R	T	Y U	1	0	Р	1	1	1
A	s	D	F	G	н).	К	L	) :	) ·		
	z	x	C	V	BN	м			/	0	
aps ock	Shift	1	_	Sp	ace		1	_			

#### The Private Print jobs are listed on the screen.

OB TYPE PRI	/ATE	Ŧ					
User01							
Doc	ument Name		Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
Document01.txt			10,09:03	A4	2	1	
Document02.txt			10,09:03	A4	2	1	4
Document03.txt			10,09:03	A4	2	1	2
Document04.txt			10,09:02	A4	2	1	2
Document05.txt			10,09.02	A4	2	1	~

#### Tips

- When the Private Print job is sent from a Windows computer:
  - When the user name that is entered to log in to your computer is used for [User name (Alias)], the displayed list contains the Private Print jobs for which the same password has been set.
  - When the nickname is entered for [User name (Alias)], the displayed list contains the Private Print jobs for which the same nickname and the same password have been set.
- When the Private Print job is sent from a Macintosh computer or a UNIX/Linux workstation:
  - The displayed list contains the Private Print jobs for which the same password has been set.

## **Printing Private Print jobs**

Follow the procedure below to release your Private Print jobs from the control panel.

1 On the Private Print job list (P.194), select a job for printing. You can select more than one job.

🚔 PRINT			*	TEMPLA	TE ,	?
JOB TYPE PRIVA	TE 💌					
User01						
Docur	nent Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
Document01.txt		10,09:03	A4	2	1	
Document021xt		10.09.03	Δ4	2	1	<u> </u>
Document03.txt		10,09:03	A4	2	1	1/2
Document04.txt		10,09.02	A4	2	1	
Document05.txt		10,09.02	A4	2	1	$\sim$
▲ RETURN DEL	ETE ALL CLEAR S	ELECT ALL			♦ P	RINT
			201	1/05/10 09:22	JOB STA	TUS 💡

- If the target job is not displayed on the screen, use and to change between pages.
- If you want to select all the jobs displayed on the screen, press [SELECT ALL]. To cancel the selection, press [ALL CLEAR].

## 2 Press [PRINT].

OB TYPE PRIVATE	v					
User01						
Document Nam	Ð	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
Document01.txt		10,09:03	A4	2	1	~
Document02.txt		10,09:03	A4	2	1	
Document03.txt		10,09:03	A4	2	1	2
Document04.txt		10,09.02	A4	2	1	2
Document05.txt		10,09.02	A4	2	1	V

The equipment starts printing.

The job in progress can be monitored on the [JOBS] tab listing the Normal Print jobs (P.186).

## Deleting Private Print jobs

Follow the procedure below to delete a Private Print job.

1 On the Private Print job list (P.194), select the job that you want to delete, and then press [DELETE]. You can select more than one job.

OB TYPE	PRIVATE				
User01					
	Document Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
Document01.txt		10,09:03	A4	2	1
Document02txt		10.09:03	A4	2	1
Document03.txt		10,09:03	A4	2	1
Document04.txt		10,08.02	A4	2	
Document05.txt		10,09.02	A4	2	1

- If the target job is not displayed on the screen, use 🛆 and 💟 to change between pages.
- If you want to select all the jobs displayed on the screen, press [SELECT ALL]. To cancel the selection, press [ALL CLEAR].

**2** When "Delete OK?" appears, press [DELETE].

🚔 PRINT	👷 TEMPL	ATE , ?
JOB TYPE User01	ATTENTION	
Document011x Document021x Document031x Document04.tx Document05.tx	Delete CK?	Sets 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
▲ RETURN	DELETE ALL CLEAR SELECT ALL	PRINT
	2011/05/10 09:25	JOB STATUS 🗼

The selected job is deleted.

## Hold Print jobs

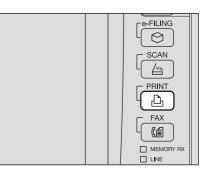
Hold Print refers to the function to retain a document from a computer on the network until a user performs printing from the equipment's touch panel. This function is useful to prevent you forgetting to remove printed sheets. Hold Print jobs can be released or deleted from the Hold Print job list.

For the detailed instructions on Hold Print, see the following page:  $\square$  P.81 "Printing hold print jobs"

## Displaying the Hold Print job list

Follow the procedure below to display the list of Hold Print jobs.

#### 1 On the control panel, press the [PRINT] button.



## 2 Select [HOLD].

🖶 PRIN <sup>-</sup>	Г		👷 TEMPL	ATE ,	?
JOB TYPE	PRIVATE	*			
	HOLD				
User01	NVALD	Ŋ			
User02	HOLD (FAX)				-
User03					1
User04					1
User05					
User06					$\sim$
ADMIN	PASSWORD			ОК	
			2011/05/10 09:39	JOB STA	TUS 🗼

The Hold Print jobs are listed on the screen.

🖶 PRINT			🖕 TEM	PLATE 🔋 ?
JOB TYPE	HOLD	¥		
		User Name		
User01				
User02				
User03				1
User04				1
User05				
User06				×
ADMIN PA	ASSWORD			ОК
			2011/05/10 09:40	JOB STATUS 🗼

**3** On the Hold Print job list, select the desired user name.

📥 PRINT	Г		👷 TEMPLATE	2
JOB TYPE	HOLD	٧		
		User Name		
User01				
USBIUZ				
User03				1
User04				1
User05				
User06				
ADMIN	PASSWORD	)		ок
			2011/05/10 09:41 JOB	STATUS ,

The displayed list contains the Hold Print jobs stored in the Hold Print queue.

#### Notes

- When you enter the nickname for [User name (Alias)] box on the [Others] tab on a Windows computer, and send the job to the equipment, its nickname will be displayed on the Hold Print job list. If not, the user name that is entered to log in to your computer will be displayed on the Hold Print job list.
- If you perform the operation as an administrator, press [ADMIN. PASSWORD] instead of selecting a user name. The on-screen keyboard appears, with which you can enter the 6-to-64-digit administrator password. In this case, the jobs can be deleted but are not allowed to be printed.

🖶 PRINT			*	TEMPL/	NTE ,	?
JOB TYPE	HOLD 🔻					
User01						
	Document Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
Document01.txt		10,09:38	A4	2	1	
Document02txt		10,09.37	A4	2	1	-
Document03.txt		10,09:37	A4	2	1	2
Document04.txt		10,09:37	A4	2	1	1
Document05.txt		10,09.37	A4	2	1	$\sim$
RETURN	DELETE ALL CLEAR	ELECT ALL				RINT
i i			201	1/05/10 09:42	JOB ST/	TUS

#### Tips

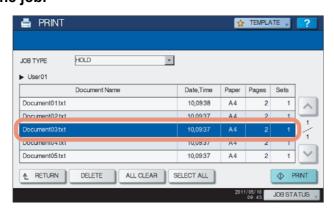
- When the Hold Print job is sent from a Windows computer:
  - When the user name that is entered to log in to your computer is used for [User name (Alias)], the displayed list contains the Hold Print jobs which have been registered by the selected user.
  - When the nickname is entered for [User name (Alias)], the displayed list contains all the Hold Print jobs which have been registered by users having the same nickname.
- When the Hold Print job is sent from a Macintosh computer or a UNIX/Linux workstation:
  - The displayed list contains the Hold Print jobs which have been registered by the selected user.

## **Printing Hold Print jobs**

1

Follow the procedure below to process your Hold Print jobs from the control panel.

On the Hold Print job list (III P.198), select a job for printing. You can select more than one job.



- If the target job is not displayed on the screen, use 🛆 and 🔽 to change between pages.
- If you want to select all the jobs displayed on the screen, press [SELECT ALL]. To cancel the selection, press [ALL CLEAR].

#### 2 Press [PRINT].

IOB TYPE	HOLD	Ŧ				
User01						
	Document Name		Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
Document01.txt			10,09:38	A4	2	1
Document02.txt			10,09:37	A4	2	1
Document03.txt			10,09:37	A4	2	1
Document04.txt			10,09:37	A4	2	1
Document05.txt			10,09.37	A4	2	1

The equipment starts printing.

The job in progress can be monitored on the [JOBS] tab listing the Normal Print jobs (P.186).

Tip

The printed job will be deleted from the Hold Print job list.

## Deleting Hold Print jobs

Follow the procedure below to delete a Hold Print job.

1 On the Hold Print job list (P.198), select the job that you want to delete, and then press [DELETE]. You can select more than one job.

OB TYPE	HOLD	r .				
User01						
	Document Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
Document01.txt		10,09:38	A4	2	1	~
Document021x1		10.0937	A 4	2	1	-
Document03.txt		10,09:37	A4	2	1	1
Document04.txt		10,09.37	A4	2		1
Document05.txt		10,09:37	A4	2	1	Y

- If the target job is not displayed on the screen, use 🛆 and 🔽 to change between pages.
- If you want to select all the jobs displayed on the screen, press [SELECT ALL]. To cancel the selection, press [ALL CLEAR].

#### **2** When "Delete OK?" appears, press [DELETE].

🚔 PRINT	ф темри	ATE ?
JOB TYPE	ATTENTION	
► User01 Document01tx Document02tx Document03tx Document04.tx Document05tx	Delete CK?	Sets 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1 1
▲ RETURN	DELETE ALL CLEAR SELECT ALL	♦ PRINT
	2011/05/10 09:45	JOB STATUS

The selected job is deleted.

#### Invalid jobs

An Invalid job refers to a job being held due to an incorrect or no department code being entered for performing the job. If the equipment is managed by the Department Management feature with the SNMP network services disabled, entering an incorrect department code for printing from a computer on the network causes the job to be held as an invalid job and stored in the Invalid job queue. To release the job from the queue, enter the correct department code on the [JOBS] tab listing the Invalid jobs.

#### Note

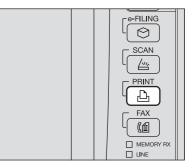
A print job whose number of copies to print exceeds the limit specified for a particular department code cannot be printed out. In this case, ask the administrator for help.

## Displaying the Invalid job list

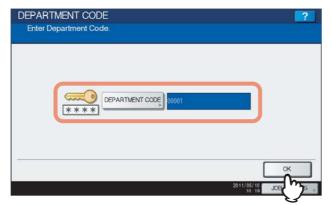
Follow the procedure below to display the list of Invalid jobs.

#### Displaying the Invalid job list

1 On the control panel, press the [PRINT] button.



2 Enter the correct department code with the on-screen keyboard and digital keys, and then press [OK].



## 3 Select [INVALID].

JOB TYPE	PRIVATE PRIVATE HOLD		
User01	NVALD		
User02		m	
User03			
User04			
User05			
User06			

The Invalid jobs are listed on the screen.

IOB TYPE	NVALD					
	User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
User01		10,10:16	A4	2	1	
User02		10,10:17	A4	2	2	-
User03		10,10:17	A4	2	3	1
User04		10,10:17	A4	2	4	1
User05		10,10:17	A4	2	5	
User06		10,10:17	A4	2	6	~

## **Printing Invalid jobs**

If you have entered an incorrect department code for printing, you need to re-enter the correct one. Follow the procedure below.

1 On the Invalid job list ( $\square$  P.202), select the job for printing.

OB TYPE	INVALID	¥				
	User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	
User01		10,10:16	A4	2	1	
User02		10,10.17	A4	2	2	_
User03		10 10 17	A4	2	3	1
User04		10,10.17	A4	2	4	1
Ceneco		10,10.17	A4	2	5	_
User06		10,10.17	A4	2	6	$\sim$

If the target job is not displayed on the screen, use	and 🔽	to change between page
---	-------	------------------------

## 2 Press [PRINT].

JOB TYPE	NVALID	v				
	User Name		Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
User01			10,10:16	A4	2	1
User02			10,10:17	A4	2	2
Liser03			10 10 17	Α4	2	3
User04			10,10:17	A4	2	4
Userus			10,10.17	A4	2	•
User06			10,10.17	A4	2	6

Printing starts.

The job in progress can be monitored from the [JOBS] tab listing the Normal Print jobs ( P.186).

## Deleting Invalid jobs

Follow the procedure below to delete an Invalid job.

**1** On the Invalid job list (P.202), select the job that you want to delete, and then press [DELETE].

IOB TYPE	NVALD	×			
	User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
User01		10,10:16	A4	2	1
User02		10,10:17	A4	2	2 -
User03		10 10 17	A 4	2	3
User04		10,10:17	A4	2	4
Userus		10,10.17	A4	2	•
User06		10,10.17	A4	2	6

If the target job is not displayed on the screen, use  $\land$  and  $\checkmark$  to change between pages.

#### **2** When "Delete OK?" appears, press [DELETE].



The selected job is deleted.

#### Printing files from USB media (USB Direct Printing)

USB Direct Printing refers to the printing of files saved in a USB storage device that is connected to the USB port on the equipment. With this feature, you can print PDF, encrypted PDF (file extension: ".pdf"), XPS (file extension: ".xps"), JPEG (file extension: ".jpg" or ".jpeg"), PRN (file extension: ".prn"), and PS (file extension: ".ps") files.

#### Notes

- USB Direct Printing requires the USB Direct Print setting to be enabled on TopAccess. For details, refer to the TopAccess Guide.
- You cannot specify which page(s) of the selected file to print. All pages are to be printed.
- USB Direct Printing supports the printing of PDF files whose versions are from 1.3 to 1.7.
- With this feature, the equipment can print encrypted PDF files whose encryption level is either "40-bit RC4" or "128bit RC4."
- The feature does not support encrypted PDF files whose encryption level is [128bit AES], and some files of other encryption levels may not be printable as well. In these cases, print these files from a client computer.
- For printing the PRN files, the page description languages supported by USB Direct Printing are PostScript 3, PCL5e, PCL5c, PCL6 and XPS.
- Do not turn on the equipment when a USB storage device is connected to the port.
- The USB storage device should meet the following requirements:
  - FAT16 and FAT32 formats

- Single-partition (USB media with multiple partitions are not supported.)

However, some of the devices may not be used in this equipment, even though these requirements have been met.

# 1 Connect your USB storage device to the USB port on the equipment.

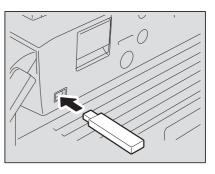
In a few seconds, "Found USB DEVICE" appears at the lower left of the screen.

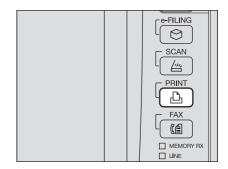
## Note

Do not disconnect the USB storage device when "USB DEVICE in use Do not remove USB DEVICE" is displayed on the screen. Removing the device while the message is displayed could destroy the data in the device or cause a malfunction of the equipment.

#### • On the control panel, press the [PRINT] button.

• If the equipment is not managed by department codes, proceed to Step 4.





# **3** Enter the department code using the on-screen keyboard and digital keys, and then press [OK].

DEPARTMENT CODE Enter Department Code.	?
Found USB DEVICE	

#### Note

The above screen will not be displayed when the equipment is not managed by department codes. Proceed to the next step.

## 4 Select [USB].

📥 PRINT		😭 TEMPLATE 🗼 🤗
JOB TYPE	PRIVATE HOLD	
User01		A
User02	USB	
User03	{n	<b>b</b> 1
User04	L.	1
User05		
User06		
ADMIN	PASSWORD	ок
Found USB D	IEVICE.	2011/05/10 JOB STATUS

#### Note

Do not disconnect the USB storage device when "USB DEVICE in use Do not remove USB DEVICE" is displayed on the screen. Removing the device while the message is displayed could destroy the data in the device or cause a malfunction of the equipment.

**5** In the list of files, select the file that you want to print. Select the files you want to print from the list.

÷.	PRINT				*	TEMPLATE	2
JOB T	YPE	USB		•			
			Document / Fo	older Name			
	FOLDER01						
	FOLDER02						
	FOI DEB03						001
	File01.pdf						001
0	FIIEUZJPG						
	File03ps						
			ALL CLEAR	SETTINGS	OPEN		PRINT
F	ound USB DEVIC	E.			2011/	05/10 JOB 11:56 JOB	STATUS 💡

- If the target file is not displayed on the screen, use  $\land$  and  $\checkmark$  to change between pages.
- To select a file contained in a folder, select the folder and press [OPEN]. In the list of files that appears, select the desired file to print.
- If you select an encrypted PDF file for which a password has been set, the password entry screen is displayed. Proceed to Step 6.
- If you change the paper size, stapling position, 2-Sided Printing setting or PDF Overprint setting, proceed to Step 9. If you start printing without changing any of them, proceed to Step 10.

#### Note

Do not disconnect the USB storage device when "USB DEVICE in use Do not remove USB DEVICE" is displayed on the screen. Removing the device while the message is displayed could destroy the data in the device or cause a malfunction of the equipment.

# 6 If you select an encrypted PDF file for which a password has been set, press [PASSWORD].

B PRINT USB PRINT This document is protected by security	TEMPLATE . ?
PASSWORD	
	CANCEL
Found USB DEVICE.	11:57 JUB STATUS

7 Using the on-screen keyboard and the digital keys, enter the user or master password for the encrypted PDF file, and then press [OK].

asic 💽		Back Space	← → Clear
1 2 Q W E	3 4 5 6 7 R T Y U I	8 9 0 - 0 P [ ]	•
A S D Z X	F G H J K C V B N M	/ @	)
Caps Look Shift	Space	CANCEL	ок

#### Tips

- If the selected encrypted PDF file was created on Adobe Acrobat 6.0 or later, enter the document open password or permissions password.
- To print an encrypted PDF file for which "Low Resolution (150 dpi)" is set on Adobe Acrobat, you must enter the permissions password that was set for the file when it was created.

#### 8 Press [OK].

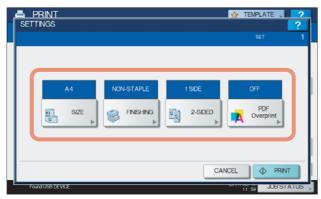
USB PRINT This document is protected by security.		P TEMPLATE 2
****	PASSWORD	
	CANCE	
Found USB DEVICE.	***	11:56 JUS -

• If you change the paper size, stapling position, 2-Sided Printing setting or PDF Overprint setting, proceed to Step 9. If you start printing without changing any of them, proceed to Step 10.

 ${\boldsymbol g}$  Press [SETTINGS] and then select the setting items as required.

#### Tips

- To print a JPEG file, you can set [SIZE].
- To print a PDF file, you can set [FINISHING], [2-SIDED] and [PDF Overprint].
- 1) Press any of [SIZE], [FINISHING], [2-SIDED] and [PDF Overprint].
- 2) Select the desired item.
- 3) Press [OK] when you finish the setting.



SIZE

Set the paper size.

SIZE SETTING					
Select a paper size.					
ſ	A3	A4	A5-R	B4	
	LD	LT	LG	B5	
	FOLIO	ST-R	COMP	13"LG	
	8.5SQ				
			RESET	CANCEL	ĸ

#### • FINISHING

Set the position of stapling.

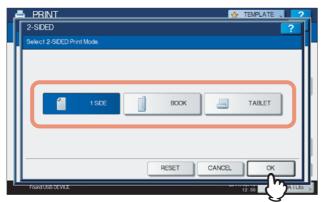
ſ	PRINT R	TEMPLATE	÷1
	Select Finishing Mode.		11-
		UPPER RIGHT	
	RESET CANCEL		 US .

**NON-STAPLE** — Select this not to staple.

**UPPER LEFT** — Select this to staple at the upper left corner. **UPPER RIGHT** — Select this to staple at the upper right corner.

#### 2-SIDED

Set 2-Sided Printing.



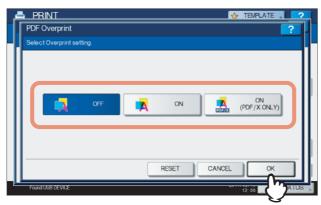
**1 SIDE** — Select this to print only one side.

**BOOK** — Select this to print on both sides by setting a vertical binding margin. Pages are turned over from right to left.

**TABLET** — Select this to print on both sides by setting a horizontal binding margin. Pages are turned over from bottom to top.

#### • PDF Overprint

If a PDF file contains an overprint, this is also overprinted on a print job when this option is enabled.



OFF — Select this not to overprint the job.

**ON** — Select this to enable overprint the job.

**ON (PDF/X ONLY)** — Select this to enable overprint the job only when the original PDF file is complied with PDF/X specifications.

#### Notes

- The paper size can be set only when you print a JPEG file. (If you print more than one JPEG file continuously, the paper size you set for the first file in this step is applied to the second and the following.)
- The PDF Overprint setting is applied only to objects overprinted in the original PDF file. If you want to
  preview the effect of overprint in the PDF file, you can do it with the Overprint Preview mode of Adobe
  Reader by switching the preview screen.

## 10 Press [PRINT].

å	PRINT			☆ TEMPLATE ,	?
JOB T'	YPE	USB			
			Document / Folder Name		1
	FOLDER01				
	FOLDER02				
	FOLDER03				00
,	File01.pdf				00
	File02JPG				
	File03ps				
			ALL CLEAR SETTINGS	OPEN 🔷	PRINT
F	Found USB DEVIC	ε		2011/05/10 JOB S	m

- The equipment starts printing. The printouts are directed to the receiving tray.
- The job in progress can be monitored from the [JOBS] tab listing the Normal Print jobs.

#### Before Disconnecting the USB Storage Device:

Make sure that "USB DEVICE in use. Do not remove USB DEVICE." is not displayed on the touch panel. If it is, do not disconnect the USB storage device; removing the device while the message is displayed could destroy the data in the device or cause a malfunction of the equipment.

## Viewing the Print Job Log

You can view the log of print jobs on the touch panel.

#### Viewing the print job log

1 On the touch panel, press [JOB STATUS].



**2** Press [LOG] to display the [LOG] tab.

PRINT FAX	SCAN					
User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets	Status	7
User01	10,08:15	A4	1	1	Scheduled	1
User02	10,1207	A4	1	5	Scheduled	-
User03	10,12.08	A4	1	1	Scheduled	
User04	10,12.08	A4	82	1	Scheduled	
User05	10,12.09	A4	2	1	Scheduled	1
DELETE PAUSE	MOVE	RECOVE		> PRIP		OSE

#### 3 Press [PRINT].

PRNT	SEND	RECEIVE	SCAN	
 - m	*		*	
S			-	
				CLOSE

The Print Log is displayed.

User Name	Date,Time	Paper	Pages	Sets
Juser01	10,12:26	A4	3	1
User02	10,12:25	A4	2	2
<b>)</b>	10,1224	A4	1	1
的 …	10,12:23	A4	1	1
	10,12.22	A4-R	1	1

On the Print Log, each job's user name, date and time of the job, paper size, the number of pages and the number of copies are displayed.

Up to 120 jobs can be listed on the log. To display the previous or next page, press  $\triangle$  or  $\checkmark$ . The number of jobs displayed on a page may vary depending on the equipment used.

To exit from the Print Log screen, press [CLOSE].

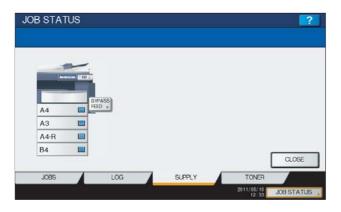
Tip

If the equipment encounters an error while printing, it records and displays an error code in the User Name column. For details on print job errors and error codes, refer to the *Troubleshooting Guide*.

## **Checking Supplies**

#### Viewing the drawer status

When the equipment is idle, pressing [JOB STATUS] > [SUPPLY] displays the [SUPPLY] tab. From this tab, you can view the paper size setting selected for each drawer. If you press [SUPPLY] when printing is in progress, the drawer from which paper is being fed is highlighted.



If you try to print a document from a client computer and specify a paper size while none of the drawers or bypass tray on the equipment has the specified size of paper, a printing error occurs, and [JOB STATUS] blinks. In this case, pressing [JOB STATUS] displays the [SUPPLY] tab, from which you can learn which drawer needs additional sheets of paper. For further instructions on how to clear a printing error, refer to the *Troubleshooting Guide*.

#### Checking remaining toner levels

Pressing [JOB STATUS] > [TONER] displays the [TONER] tab from which you can check the approximate amount of toner remaining in the toner cartridges.

	0	25	50	75	100%	
YELLOW(Y)	-		Ĩ			
MAGENTA(M)	-	1	1	1		
CYAN(C)		1	- A	1		
BLACK(K)		_		_		

If any of the toner cartridges is running out, be sure to get a new cartridge ready. For more information about replacing toner cartridges, refer to the *Quick Start Guide* or the *Troubleshooting Guide*.

# 6

# **OTHER PRINTING METHODS**

This equipment also supports the following printing methods:

FTP Printing	216
Email Printing	217

#### **FTP Printing**

FTP printing is available when the FTP print service is enabled on this equipment. You can print a document by sending the print file to this equipment using the FTP. This equipment can accept the following files for printing:

- PCL file
- PS file
- Text file



When the User Management setting is enabled, a print job sent in FTP printing is processed as an invalid job according to the User Authentication Enforcement setting. For more information about the User Authentication Enforcement setting, refer to the *TopAccess Guide*.

#### Tips

- In Windows, you can create the PCL file and PS file using the printer driver. To create the PCL file or PS file, change the printer port of the printer driver to "FILE:" port and print a document using the printer driver. For more information about printing to a file, refer to the Windows documentation.
- In Macintosh, you can create the PS file using the printer driver. To create the PS file, select "File" at the [Destination] box in the Print dialog box to print. For more information about printing to a file, refer to the Macintosh documentation.

#### Printing a file using the FTP command

The procedure below describes the example of printing using the FTP command with the MS-DOS Prompt.

- 1 Launch the MS-DOS Prompt.
- **2** Change the current directory to that in which the print file is located.

#### **3** Type following command and press the [Enter] key:

ftp <IP Address>

In the <IP Address> section, enter the IP address of this equipment.

4 If it prompts you to enter the user name, enter the FTP Print User Name and press the [Enter] key.

#### Note

It prompts you to enter the user name if the FTP Print User Name is assigned by an administrator. Ask your administrator for the FTP Print User Name.

### **5** If it prompts you to enter the password, enter the FTP Print Password and press the [Enter] key.

#### Notes

- It prompts you to enter the password if the FTP Print User Name is assigned by an administrator. Ask your administrator for the FTP Print Password.
- If the FTP Print User Name has been assigned but the FTP Print Password is blank, do not enter when it prompts you to enter the password and press the [Enter] key.

#### Type the following command and press the [Enter] key:

put <file name>

For example, if the print file name is "sample.ps": put sample.ps

#### 7 The file is sent to this equipment and spooled in the queue.

#### **Email Printing**

Email printing is available when enabled on this equipment.

You can print a document by sending the print file, as an email attachment, to this equipment using the mail client software. This equipment can accept only TIFF-FX (Profile S), TIFF-FX (Profile F) and TIFF-FX (Profile J) files for printing:

#### Notes

- When the User Management setting is enabled, a print job sent by Email is processed as an invalid job according to the User Authentication Enforcement setting. For more information about the User Authentication Enforcement setting, refer to the *TopAccess Guide*.
- An Email print job has two printing types, Discard Printing and RX Reduction Printing, that can be set by pressing the [RX PRINT] button in [FAX] of the ADMIN menu on the control panel.
   When Discard Printing is ON, the part of the print image that exceeds the paper printing area is discarded if the print image is up to 10 mm larger than the printing area. If the print image is 10 mm larger or more than the printing area, the print image is printed on the largest sheet of paper.
   When Discard Printing is OFF, the print image is printed on the largest sheet of paper if its length exceeds the paper printing area.
   When RX Reduction Printing is ON, it will be vertically reduced to fit on the paper if the print image is longer than the paper. When the print image cannot fit in the paper even if the print image is reduced, the print image is printed on the largest sheet of paper.

When RX Reduction Printing is OFF, the print image is printed on the largest sheet of paper if its length exceeds the paper printing area.

#### Printing a file using the email client

The procedure below gives an example of printing using Microsoft Outlook Express.

#### Note

When you send an email message to this equipment to print a file, send it in plain text format. If you send an email message in HTML format, this equipment prints the HTML source code of the message.

- Open your email application and create a new mail message.
- **7** Enter the email address of the equipment in the To: line.
- 2 Enter text in the Subject line or leave the Subject line blank.
- **A** Enter text in the body field.
- **5** Attach the file you want to print.
- Send the email.

#### Note

The header and body of the email will be printed only when the "Print Header" and "Print Message Body" for the Email print service are enabled on this equipment.

# 

## **APPENDIX**

This chapter provides the following contents.

Internal Fonts List	
Internal PCL fonts list	
Internal PS fonts list	

#### **Internal Fonts List**

The following fonts are included in this equipment.

#### ■ Internal PCL fonts list

0	Courier	42	Helvetica-Narrow-Bold
1	CG-Times	43	Helvetica-Narrow-Oblique
2	CG-Times Bold	44	Helvetica-Narrow-BoldOblique
3	CG-Times Italic	45	Palatino-Roman
4	CG-Times Bold Italic	46	Palatino-Bold
5	CG Omega	47	Palatino-Italic
6	CG Omega Bold	48	Palatino-BoldItalic
7	CG Omega Italic	49	ITC AvantGarde-Book
8	CG Omega Bold Italic	50	ITC AvantGarde-BookOblique
9	Coronet	51	ITC AvantGarde-Demi
10	Clarendon Condensed	52	ITC AvantGarde-DemiOblique
11	Univers Medium	53	ITC Bookman-Light
12	Univers Bold	54	ITC Bookman-LightItalic
13	Univers Italic	55	ITC Bookman-Demi
14	Univers Bold Italic	56	ITC Bookman-Demiltalic
15	Univers Medium Condensed	57	NewCenturySchlbk-Roman
16	Univers Condensed Bold	58	NewCenturySchlbk-Bold
17	Univers Medium Condensed Italic	59	NewCenturySchlbk-Italic
18	Univers Condensed Bold Italic	60	NewCenturySchlbk-BoldItalic
19	Antique Olive	61	Times-Roman
20	Antique Olive Bold	62	Times-Bold
21	Antique Olive Italic	63	Times-Italic
22	Garamond Antiqua	64	Times-BoldItalic
23	Garamond Halbfett	65	ITCZapfChancery-MediumItalic
24	Garamond Kursiv	66	Symbol
25	Garamond Kursiv Halbfett	67	Symbol PS
26	Mrigold	68	Wingdings
27	Albertus Medium	69	ITCZapfDingbats
28	Albertus Extra Bold	70	Courier Bold
29	Arial	71	Courier Italic
30	Arial Bold	72	Courier Bold Italic
31	Arial Italic	73	Letter Gothic Regular
32	Arial Bold Italic	74	Letter Gothic Bold
33	Times New Roman	75	Letter Gothic Italic
34	Times New Roman Bold	76	CourierPS
35	Times New Roman Italic	77	CourierPS Oblique
36	Times New Roman Bold Italic	78	CourierPS Bold
37	Helvetica	79	CourierPS BoldOblique
38	Helvetica-Bold	80	AndaleMonoWTJ *1
39	Helvetica-Oblique	81	AndaleMonoWTK *1
40	Helvetica-BoldOblique	82	AndaleMonoWTT *1
41	Helvetica-Narrow	83	AndaleMonoWTS *1
	hese fonts can be added when the ontional Unicod		

\*1 These fonts can be added when the optional Unicode Font Enabler is installed.

#### ■ Internal PS fonts list

AlbertusMT-Light	Eurostile-ExtendedTwo
AlbertusMT	Eurostile-BoldExtendedTwo
AlbertusMT-Italic	Geneva
AntiqueOlive-Roman	GillSans-Light
AntiqueOlive-Italic	GillSans-LightItalic
AntiqueOlive-Bold	GillSans
AntiqueOlive-Dona AntiqueOlive-Compact	GillSans-Italic
Apple-Chancery	GillSans-Bold
ArialMT	GillSans-BoldItalic
Arial-ItalicMT	GillSans-ExtraBold
Arial-BoldMT	GillSans-BoldCondensed
Arial-BoldItalicMT	GillSans-Condensed
AvantGarde-Book	Goudy
AvantGarde-BookOblique	Goudy-Italic
AvantGarde-Demi	Goudy-Bold
AvantGarde-DemiOblique	Goudy-BoldItalic
Bodoni	Goudy-ExtraBold
Bodoni-Italic	Helvetica
Bodoni-Bold	Helvetica-Obligue
Bodoni-BoldItalic	Helvetica-Bold
Bodoni-Poster	Helvetica-BoldOblique
Bodoni-PosterCompressed	Helvetica-Condensed
Bookman-Light	Helvetica-Condensed-Oblique
Bookman-LightItalic	Helvetica-Condensed-Bold
Bookman-Demi	Helvetica-Condensed-BoldObl
Bookman-Demiltalic	Helvetica-Narrow
Candid	Helvetica-Narrow-Oblique
Chicago	Helvetica-Narrow-Bold
Clarendon-Light	Helvetica-Narrow-BoldOblique
Clarendon	HoeflerText-Regular
Clarendon-Bold	HoeflerText-Italic
CooperBlack	HoeflerText-Black
CooperBlack-Italic	HoeflerText-BlackItalic
Copperplate-ThirtyTwoBC	HoeflerText-Ornaments
Copperplate-ThirtyThreeBC	JoannaMT
Coronet-Regular	JoannaMT-Italic
Courier	JoannaMT-Bold
Courier-Oblique	JoannaMT-BoldItalic
Courier-Bold	LetterGothic
Courier-BoldOblique	LetterGothic-Slanted
Eurostile	LetterGothic-Bold
Eurostile-Bold	LetterGothic-BoldSlanted
LubalinGraph-Book	Univers-CondensedBold
LubalinGraph-BookOblique	Univers-CondensedBoldOblique
LubalinGraph-Demi	Univers-Extended
LubalinGraph-DemiOblique	Univers-ExtendedObl
Marigold	Univers-BoldExt
Monaco	Univers-BoldExtObl
MonaLisa-Recut	Wingdings-Regular
NewCenturySchlbk-Roman	ZapfChancery-MediumItalic

NewCenturySchlbk-Italic	ZapfDingbats
NewCenturySchlbk-Bold	IPAexGothic
NewCenturySchlbk-BoldItalic	IPAexMincho
NewYork	
Optima	
Optima-Italic	
Optima-Bold	
Optima-BoldItalic	
Oxford	
Palatino-Roman	
Palatino-Italic	
Palatino-Bold	
Palatino-BoldItalic	
StempelGaramond-Roman	
StempelGaramond-Italic	
StempelGaramond-Bold	
StempelGaramond-BoldItalic	
Symbol	
Taffy	
Times-Roman	
Times-Italic	
Times-Bold	
Times-BoldItalic	
TimesNewRomanPSMT	
TimesNewRomanPS-ItalicMT	
TimesNewRomanPS-BoldMT	
TimesNewRomanPS-BoldItalicMT	
Univers-Light	
Univers-LightOblique	
Univers	
Univers-Oblique	
Univers-Bold	
Univers-BoldOblique	
Univers-Condensed	
Univers-CondensedOblique	

#### Numerics

2-Sided Printing	
5-digit password	

#### Α

A4 Tab	
Account Settings	
Add Printer	
Advanced Color Settings	138
[Advanced] tab	
All Colors	54
All pages from	133, 153
Angle	60, 104, 148
Apply to	53
Apply to Device Color Only	

#### В

Background Adjustment	55, 137, 159
[Basic] tab	27, 29, 51, 90
Billing Info	
Binding	
Black Overprint	
Booklet	
Booklet Center Margin	
Booklet Details	41
Booklet Outer Margin	
Booklet Paper Size	
Booklet without Center Margin	41
Border	
Brightness	55, 137, 158

#### С

Caption	
Checking Supplies	
CMYK Source Profile	
CMYK Source profiles	138
Collated	
Color	
Color Balance	
Color Balance Detail	54
[Color Balance] tab	54
Color Conversion	130
Color Matching	
Color Settings	
Color Type	
ColorSync	130, 131
Community Name	66
Compress Bitmap	75
Configuration Settings	10
Considerations	
Contrast	
Copies	
Copies & Pages	
Copy Handling	
Cover Page	
Cover Page Type	
Cover Pages	
Custom	
Custom Page Sizes	
Custom Paper Size	
Customization	70

#### D

Default Menu Setting	 			63
Department Code				
Destination	 32,	141,	147,	159

Destination folder
Destination Paper Size129, 130
Destination profiles
Detail
Device Settings Retrieval70
[Device Settings] tab12, 27, 69
Direction of Print
Direction of print
Disconnecting USB Storage Device
Discovered Printers67
Distinguish Thin Lines50, 52, 137, 140, 155
Do not Print Blank Pages63, 140, 163
Domain Name72
Draw as Outline60, 104
Draw Borders Around Pages
Drawer Settings
Drawers
Duplex
Duplicate45, 102

#### Е

Each Color Edit	
Edit Templates	
[Effect] tab	27, 57, 103
e-Filing	147
Encrypted PDF	205
Error Handling	133, 153
Export	
External LCF	

#### F

Features	6
Finisher	
Finishing	
[Finishing] tab	
First page from	
Flip horizontally	127
Folding	
Font	148
Font Name	60, 104
Font Size	60, 104
Format	
Format For	
Functions	6

#### н

	50, 52, 136, 146, 155, 166
Deleting	
Printing	
Hold Print Restriction	
Hole Punch	
Hole Punch Unit	
How to print	

#### I

Image Attribute	137
[Image Attribute] tab	55
[Image Quality] tab	27, 49
Image Quality Type	50
Image Scale	0, 90, 91
Image Shift Width	, 47, 110

Image Type	136, 156
Import	65
In Printer	
Initial values	19
Insert Pages	44, 46, 100
Inserter Unit	
Interleave Pages	
Internal Fonts	
Invalid Jobs	
Deleting	204
Displaying	
Printing	
-	

#### J

JOB STATUS	212
Hold Print	
Invalid	202
Normal Print	
Private Print	
Proof Print	191
Scheduled Print	
JPEG	205
JPEG Compression	75

#### L

Language       7         Layout       126, 15         Layout Direction       126, 15         Left to Right Page Layout       144, 15         Letter Tab       30, 10         Letterhead Print Mode       6         Limitations       16, 118, 16         Long Edge       3         Ip command       16	114938268
Ip command	

#### Μ

Margin	
Center	41
Outer	41
Units	41
Menu Tabs	27
Mirror	
Model Selection	12, 69
Multiple Job Type	
Multiple Overlays	

#### Ν

Negative/Positive	59
Normal Print	
Changing order	189
Deleting	187
Pausing	188
Resuming	188
Number of Copies	32, 76
Number of pages per Sheet	37, 97
Number of tabs per Bank	47

#### 0

Option	69
Orientation	
Original Image Quality Type	
Original Paper Size	29, 90, 109
[Others] tab	

	Primary Tab Dialog
16, 118, 168	Print
212	Print Cover Page
36	Print Document

Output Devices	64
Output Document Layout	
Output Format	75
Output Options	127, 152
Output PDL	75
Overlay Image	
Overlay Images	61
Override Application Paper Source Settings	13, 71

#### Ρ

Page Attributes		
Page Order		
Pages		
Pages per Sheet	126,	151
Pages to Print	129,	130
Paper Feed		
Paper Handling		
[Paper Handling] tab27		
Paper Size		
Paper Source		
Paper Type		31
PCL fonts		220
PDF		205
[PDL Settings] tab		75
[Plug-in] tab		73
Position		
Poster Print		
PostScript Errors		
PostScript Overprint	136.	156
PPD		
Preview window		
Primary Tab Dialog		
Print	128	129
Print Cover Page		
Print Document		
Print Error Information		
Print Job		
Print Job		
Print on Both Sides	 E0	102
Print on First Page Only		
Print Options		19
Print Over the Document		
Print Paper Size		
Print the document		
Print to Overlay File		
Print under the document		149
printer description file		
Printer Drivers		
Printer Features		
Printer Name		
Printing Modes		163
Printing Modes DC		164
Printing on paper larger than standard sizes		111
Priority		128
Private Print	27	, 80
Deleting		197
Displaying		
Printing		
Private Print Restriction		
PRN		
Profile		
Proof Print		
Deleting		
Displaying		191
Printing		192
PS		
. •	•••••	200

PS fonts Pure Black Pure Black and Gray	52
Pure Gray	52
Q	

Quality	 46,	166

#### R

Remaining from       133, 153         Rendering Intent       56, 139         Resolution       52, 137, 155         Restore Defaults 28, 42, 53, 54, 55, 56, 60, 62, 71, 74, 75         Reverse page order       128         Reverse page orientation       127         Revert to defaults       139         RGB Source Profile       56	5
RGB Source profiles	

#### S

Saturation Save as File Save Current Settings as	
Scale	121
Scheduled Print	
Changing order	
Deleting	
Pausing	
Resuming	
Scheduler	
Server Name	
Settings	
Sharpness	
Short Edge	
Size	
Smoothing	
SNMP Communication	• •
SNMP Settings	
SNMP V1/V2	-
SNMP V3	
Solid	
Staple	•
Staple Down the Center	
Status	
Drawer	214
Print job	
Print job log	
Toner	
Store this document to e-Filing	
Store to e-Filing	
<b>,</b>	
Summary	
Supply Levels	149

#### т

Tray Switching	153
Two Sided Printing	127
Two-Sided	125

#### U

Units	
Update Now	56, 70
USB Direct Printing	205
USB media	205
USB storage device	205
Use Back Cover4	
Use Black for All Text	51
Use Black for All Texts	52
Use Custom Margin	40
Use Front Cover4	3, 100, 145
Use Sharpness Filter	55, 158
Use Tab Paper	
Use these settings	139
Use User Authentication	
User Name	72
User name (Alias)	64
v	
Version Information	66, 70

#### w

Watermark		. 58,	60,	103,	148
-----------	--	-------	-----	------	-----

ES9160 MFP/ES9170 MFP ES9460 MFP/ES9470 MFP CX3535 MFP/CX4545 MFP

	•	•	•	٠	٠	•	*	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	•	•	٠	•	٠	٠	٠
	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠
	٠	٠	٠	۰	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	۰	٠	٠
Oki Data Corporation	*	•	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	٠	٠
4-11-22 Shibaura, Minato-ku,Tokyo	•	•	•	٠	٠	•	•	٠	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	•	٠	٠	٠	•	•	•
108-8551, Japan	٠	٠	٠	۰	٠	٠	٠	٠	۰	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠
	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	٠
	*	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	•	•	٠	•	٠	٠	•	•
www.okiprintingsolutions.com	٠	•	•	٠	٠	•	*	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	*	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠
	٠	•	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠
	٠	•	•	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	٠	•	٠	٠	٠
	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	۰	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠	٠
					•		•	•	٠		•		•	•	•	•	•	•	٠	•	•	•	•	٠

#### 45106002EE